



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : A61K 31/535, 31/44, 31/415, C07D 413/00, 401/00, 417/00, 419/00, 233/66	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 99/17777 (43) International Publication Date: 15 April 1999 (15.04.99)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US98/21063		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CN, CU, CZ, EE, GD, GE, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KG, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LT, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, US, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).
(22) International Filing Date: 7 October 1998 (07.10.98)		
(30) Priority Data: 60/062,660 8 October 1997 (08.10.97) US		
(71) Applicant (<i>for all designated States except US</i>): MERCK & CO., INC. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).		
(72) Inventors; and		Published
(75) Inventors/Applicants (<i>for US only</i>): DESOLMS, S., Jane [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). HUTCHINSON, John, H. [CA/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). SHAW, Anthony, W. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). GRAHAM, Samuel, L. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). CICCARONE, Terrence, M. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).		<i>With international search report.</i>
(74) Common Representative: MERCK & CO., INC.; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).		

(54) Title: INHIBITORS OF PRENYL-PROTEIN TRANSFERASE**(57) Abstract**

The present invention is directed to compounds which inhibit a prenyl-protein transferase (FTase) and the farnesylation of the oncogene protein Ras. The invention is further directed to chemotherapeutic compositions containing the compounds of this invention and methods for inhibiting a prenyl-protein transferase and the prenylation of the oncogene protein Ras.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

TITLE OF THE INVENTION**INHIBITORS OF PRENYL-PROTEIN TRANSFERASE****DOMESTIC PRIORITY CLAIM**

5 The priority of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/062,660,
filed October 8, 1997, is claimed.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The Ras proteins (Ha-Ras, Ki4a-Ras, Ki4b-Ras and N-Ras)
10 are part of a signaling pathway that links cell surface growth factor
receptors to nuclear signals initiating cellular proliferation. Biological
and biochemical studies of Ras action indicate that Ras functions like a
G-regulatory protein. In the inactive state, Ras is bound to GDP. Upon
growth factor receptor activation Ras is induced to exchange GDP for
15 GTP and undergoes a conformational change. The GTP-bound form of
Ras propagates the growth stimulatory signal until the signal is
terminated by the intrinsic GTPase activity of Ras, which returns the
protein to its inactive GDP bound form (D.R. Lowy and D.M. Willumsen,
Ann. Rev. Biochem. 62:851-891 (1993)). Mutated *ras* genes (Ha-*ras*, Ki4a-
20 *ras*, Ki4b-*ras* and N-*ras*) are found in many human cancers, including
colorectal carcinoma, exocrine pancreatic carcinoma, and myeloid
leukemias. The protein products of these genes are defective in their
GTPase activity and constitutively transmit a growth stimulatory signal.

Ras must be localized to the plasma membrane for both
25 normal and oncogenic functions. At least 3 post-translational
modifications are involved with Ras membrane localization, and all 3
modifications occur at the C-terminus of Ras. The Ras C-terminus
contains a sequence motif termed a "CAAX" or "Cys-Aaa¹-Aaa²-Xaa"
box (Cys is cysteine, Aaa is an aliphatic amino acid, the Xaa is any
30 amino acid) (Willumsen *et al.*, *Nature* 310:583-586 (1984)). Depending on
the specific sequence, this motif serves as a signal sequence for the
enzymes farnesyl-protein transferase or geranylgeranyl-protein
transferase, which catalyze the alkylation of the cysteine residue of the
CAAX motif with a C15 or C20 isoprenoid, respectively. Such enzymes
35 may be generally termed prenyl-protein transferase. (S. Clarke., *Ann.*

Rev. Biochem. 61:355-386 (1992); W.R. Schafer and J. Rine, Ann. Rev. Genetics 30:209-237 (1992)). The Ras protein is one of several proteins that are known to undergo post-translational farnesylation. Other farnesylated proteins include the Ras-related GTP-binding proteins such as Rho, fungal mating factors, the nuclear lamins, and the gamma subunit of transducin. James, et al., J. Biol. Chem. 269, 14182 (1994) have identified a peroxisome associated protein Pxf which is also farnesylated. James, et al., have also suggested that there are farnesylated proteins of unknown structure and function in addition to those listed above.

Inhibition of farnesyl-protein transferase has been shown to block the growth of Ras-transformed cells in soft agar and to modify other aspects of their transformed phenotype. It has also been demonstrated that certain inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase selectively block the processing of the Ras oncoprotein intracellularly (N.E. Kohl et al., Science, 260:1934-1937 (1993) and G.L. James et al., Science, 260:1937-1942 (1993). Recently, it has been shown that an inhibitor of farnesyl-protein transferase blocks the growth of *ras*-dependent tumors in nude mice (N.E. Kohl et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci U.S.A., 91:9141-9145 (1994) and induces regression of mammary and salivary carcinomas in *ras* transgenic mice (N.E. Kohl et al., Nature Medicine, 1:792-797 (1995).

Indirect inhibition of farnesyl-protein transferase *in vivo* has been demonstrated with lovastatin (Merck & Co., Rahway, NJ) and compactin (Hancock et al., ibid; Casey et al., ibid; Schafer et al., Science 245:379 (1989)). These drugs inhibit HMG-CoA reductase, the rate limiting enzyme for the production of polyisoprenoids including farnesyl pyrophosphate. Farnesyl-protein transferase utilizes farnesyl pyrophosphate to covalently modify the Cys thiol group of the Ras CAAX box with a farnesyl group (Reiss et al., Cell, 62:81-88 (1990); Schaber et al., J. Biol. Chem., 265:14701-14704 (1990); Schafer et al., Science, 249:1133-1139 (1990); Manne et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci USA, 87:7541-7545 (1990)). Inhibition of farnesyl pyrophosphate biosynthesis by inhibiting HMG-CoA reductase blocks Ras membrane localization in cultured cells. However, direct inhibition of farnesyl-protein transferase

would be more specific and attended by fewer side effects than would occur with the required dose of a general inhibitor of isoprene biosynthesis.

Inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase (FPTase) have
5 been described in two general classes. The first are analogs of farnesyl diphosphate (FPP), while the second class of inhibitors is related to the protein substrates (e.g., Ras) for the enzyme. The peptide derived inhibitors that have been described are generally cysteine containing molecules that are related to the CAAX motif that is the signal for
10 protein prenylation. (Schaber *et al.*, *ibid*; Reiss *et. al.*, *ibid*; Reiss *et al.*, *PNAS*, 88:732-736 (1991)). Such inhibitors may inhibit protein prenylation while serving as alternate substrates for the farnesyl-protein transferase enzyme, or may be purely competitive inhibitors
15 (U.S. Patent 5,141,851, University of Texas; N.E. Kohl *et al.*, *Science*, 260:1934-1937 (1993); Graham, et al., *J. Med. Chem.*, 37, 725 (1994)). In general, deletion of the thiol from a CAAX derivative has been shown to dramatically reduce the inhibitory potency of the compound. However,
the thiol group potentially places limitations on the therapeutic application of FPTase inhibitors with respect to pharmacokinetics,
20 pharmacodynamics and toxicity. Therefore, a functional replacement for the thiol is desirable.

It has recently been reported that farnesyl-protein transferase inhibitors are inhibitors of proliferation of vascular smooth muscle cells and are therefore useful in the prevention and therapy of arteriosclerosis and diabetic disturbance of blood vessels (JP H7-112930).

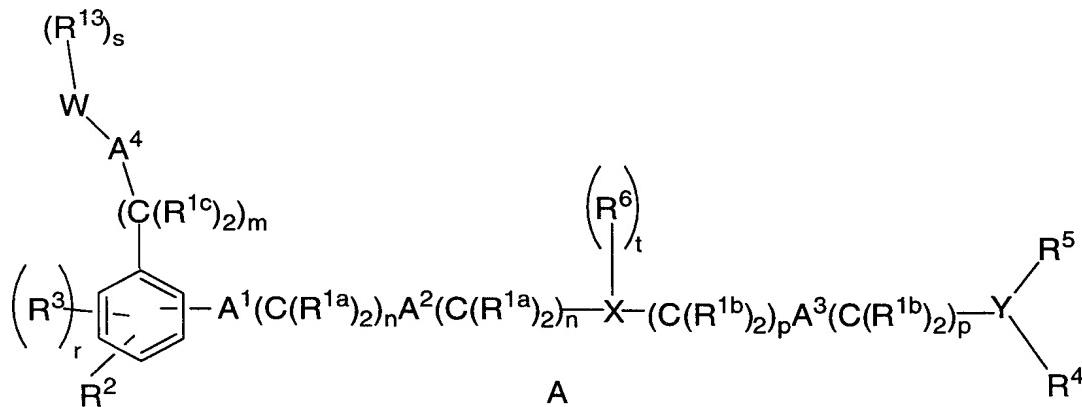
It has recently been disclosed that certain tricyclic compounds which optionally incorporate a piperidine moiety are inhibitors of FPTase (WO 95/10514, WO 95/10515 and WO 95/10516). Imidazole-containing inhibitors of farnesyl protein transferase have
30 also been disclosed (WO 95/09001 and EP 0 675 112 A1).

It is, therefore, an object of this invention to develop compounds that inhibit prenyl-protein transferase and thus, the post-translational isoprenylation of proteins. It is a further object of this invention to develop chemotherapeutic compositions containing the

compounds of this invention and methods for producing the compounds of this invention.

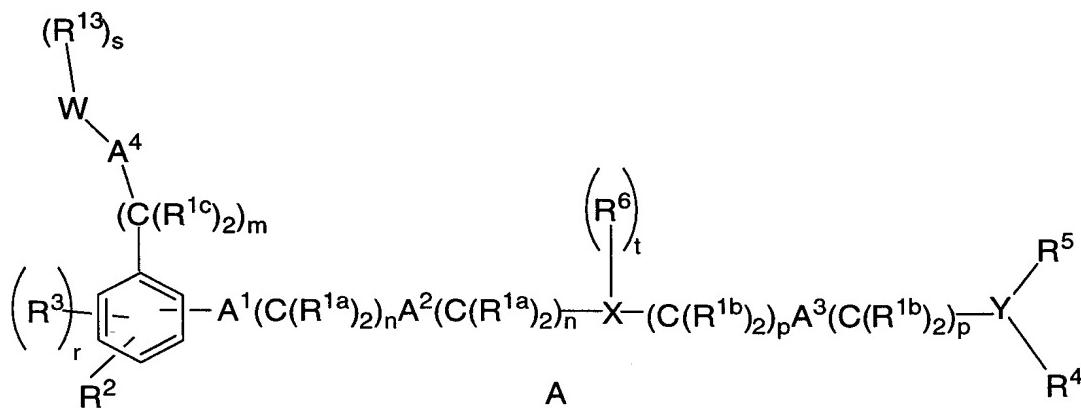
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

- 5 The present invention comprises small molecule phenyl-containing compounds which inhibit a prenyl-protein transferase. Further contained in this invention are chemotherapeutic compositions containing these prenyl transferase inhibitors and methods for their production.
- 10 The compounds of this invention are illustrated by the formula A:



15 DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The compounds of this invention are useful in the inhibition of prenyl-protein transferase and the prenylation of the oncogene protein Ras. In a first embodiment of this invention, the inhibitors of prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula A:



wherein:

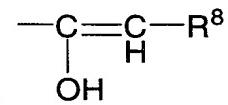
R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- 5 a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

- 15 R² is selected from:
 - a) hydrogen,
 - b) CN,
 - c) NO₂,
 - d) halogen,
 - e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
 - f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
 - g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
 - h) N₃,
 - i) R⁹S(O)_q,
 - j) R⁸HC=CH-,

- k) $R^8C\equiv C-$, and
- l) OR^8 ;

R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are independently selected from:

- 5 H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
- 10 -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)R⁸, -CH=CH-R⁸ and  ;

R^6 is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- 15 c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 20 g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O-,
- i) N₃,
- j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
- k) -HC=CH₂,
- 25 l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF₃
- n) R⁸O(C=O)-, and
- o) R⁸(O=C)O-;

R^8 is independently selected from

- 30 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R^9 is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R¹³ is independently selected from

5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

10 A¹, A² and A³ are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- d) -O-,
- 15 e) -(C=O)-,
- f) -O(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -NR⁸-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- 20 j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
- k) -NHC(O)NH-,
- l) -S(O)_q-,
- m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
- n) -NHS(O)_q-;

25

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 30 b) heterocycle, and
- c) aryl;

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,

- b) cycloalkyl,
- c) heterocycle, and
- d) a bond;

5 Y is selected from:

- a) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- c) cycloalkyl;

10 m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

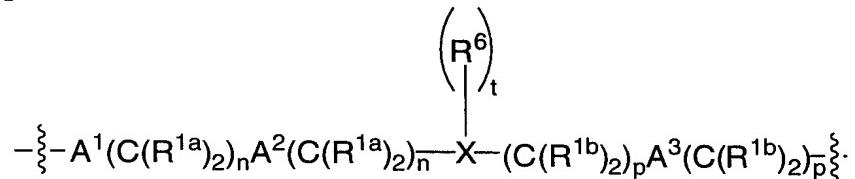
q is 0, 1 or 2;

r is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

15 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and;

t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

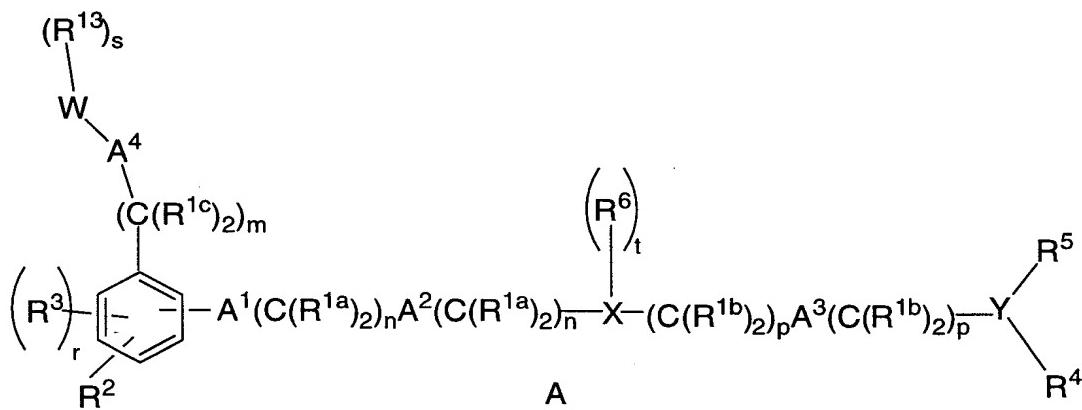
provided that



20 is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In a further embodiment of this invention, the inhibitors of
25 a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula A:



wherein:

R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- 5 a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or
 substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
 C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-,
 R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl,
 heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆
 alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or
 R⁸C(O)O-;

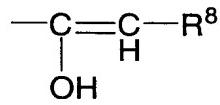
15 R² is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 20 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) N₃,
- i) R⁹S(O)_q,
- 25 j) R⁸HC=C-,

- k) $R^8C\equiv C-$, and
- l) OR^8 ;

R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are independently selected from:

- 5 H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, -C≡CH, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,

10 -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)R⁸, -CH=CH-R⁸ and  ;

R^6 is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
 b) CN,
 15 c) NO₂,
 d) halogen,
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
 g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
 20 h) R⁸O-, unsubstituted or substituted,
 i) N₃,
 j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
 k) -HC=CH₂,
 l) -C≡CH,
 25 m) CF₃
 n) R⁸O(C=O)-, and
 o) R⁸(O=C)O-;

R^8 is independently selected from

- 30 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R^9 is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R¹³ is independently selected from

5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

10 A¹, A² and A³ are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- d) -O-,
- 15 e) -(C=O)-,
- f) -O(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -NR⁸-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- 20 j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
- k) -NHC(O)NH-,
- l) -S(O)_q-,
- m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
- n) -NHS(O)_q-;

25

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a) heterocycle, and
- 30 b) aryl;

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- b) cycloalkyl,

- c) heterocycle, and
- d) a bond;

Y is selected from:

- 5 a) aryl,
- b) heterocycle, and
- c) cycloalkyl;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

10 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

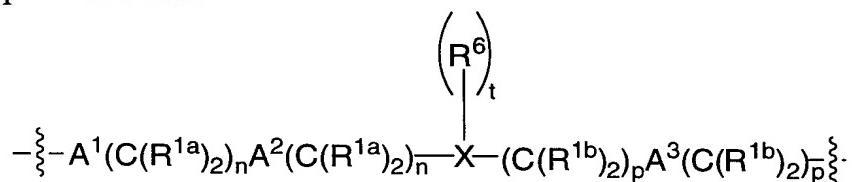
q is 0, 1 or 2;

r is 1 or 2;

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

15 t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

provided that

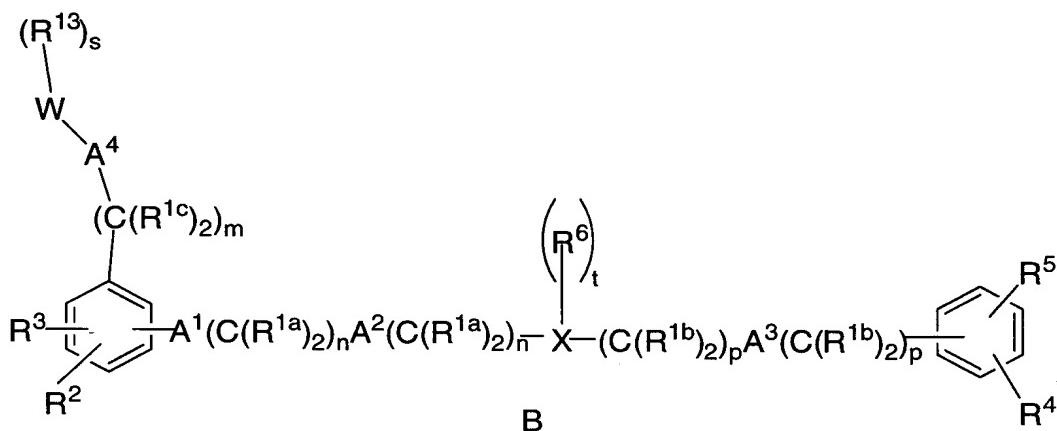


is not a bond;

20

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In another embodiment of the instant invention, the inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by formula B:



wherein:

R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

R² is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) N₃,
- i) R⁹S(O)_q,
- j) R⁸HC=CH-,
- 25 k) R⁸C≡C-, and

1) OR⁸;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

5 H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)R⁸, -CH=CH-R⁸ and ;

10

R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- 15 d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O-,
- 20 i) N₃,
- j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
- k) -HC=CH₂,
- l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF₃
- 25 n) R⁸O(C=O)-, and
- o) R⁸(O=C)O-;

R⁸ is independently selected from

30 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R¹³ is independently selected from

5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

10 A¹, A² and A³ are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- d) -O-,
- 15 e) -(C=O)-,
- f) -O(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -NR⁸-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- 20 j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
- k) -NHC(O)NH-,
- l) -S(O)_q-,
- m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
- n) -NHS(O)_q-;

25

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a) heterocycle, and
- 30 b) aryl;

X is selected from:

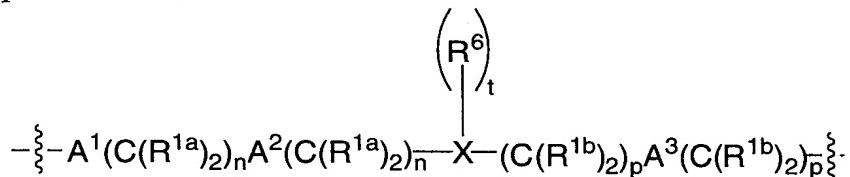
- a) aryl,
- b) cycloalkyl,

c) heterocycle, and
d) a bond;

- m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 5 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 q is 0, 1 or 2;
 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
 t is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

10

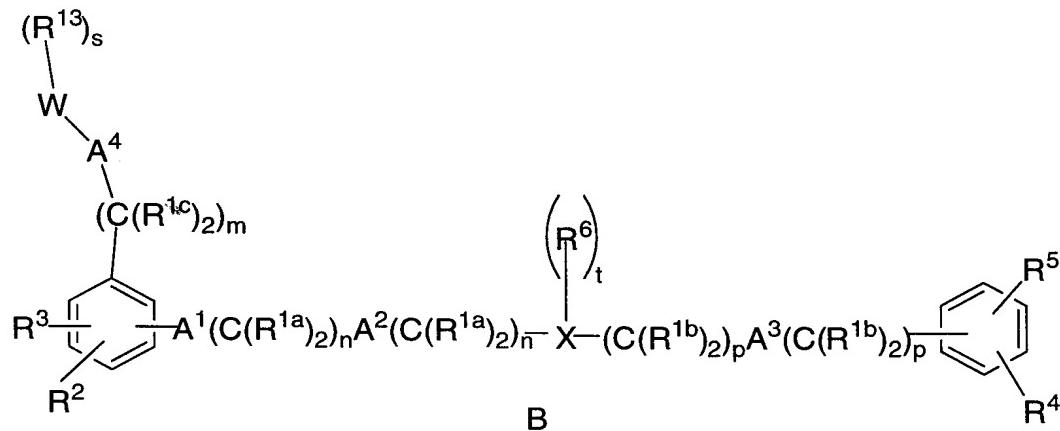
provided that



is not a bond;

- 15 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In further embodiment of the instant invention, the inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by formula B:



20 wherein:

R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- 5 a) hydrogen,
 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or
 substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl,
 C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-,
 R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl,
 heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆
 alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or
 R⁸C(O)O-;
- 10

R² is selected from:

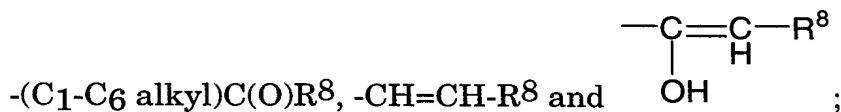
- 15 a) hydrogen,
 b) CN,
 c) NO₂,
 d) halogen,
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
 g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
 h) N₃,

20 i) R⁹S(O)_q,
 j) R⁸HC=CH-,
 k) R⁸C≡C, and
 l) OR⁸;

25 R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,

30 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,



R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 5 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O-,
- i) N₃,
- 10 j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
- k) -HC=CH₂,
- l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF₃
- n) R⁸O(C=O)-, and
- 15 o) R⁸(O=C)O-;

R⁸ is independently selected from
hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

- 20 R⁹ is independently selected from
H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and
unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

- 25 R¹³ is independently selected from
H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted
or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,
-(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆
alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

- 30 A¹ is selected from:
 - a) a bond,
 - b) -O-,
 - c) -(C=O)-,
 - 35 d) -NR⁸-,

- e) -C(O)N(R⁸)-, and
- f) -S(O)_{q-};

A² and A³ are independently selected from:

- 5 a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- d) -O-,
- e) -(C=O)-,
- 10 f) -O(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -NR⁸-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
- 15 k) -NHC(O)NH-,
- l) -S(O)_{q-},
- m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
- n) -NHS(O)_{q-};

20 A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

W is a heterocycle,

X is selected from:

- 25 a) aryl,
- b) heterocycle, and
- c) a bond;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

30 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

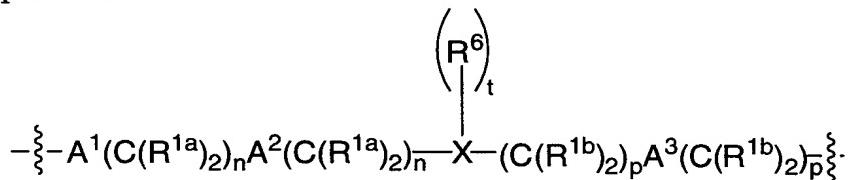
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2;

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

provided that



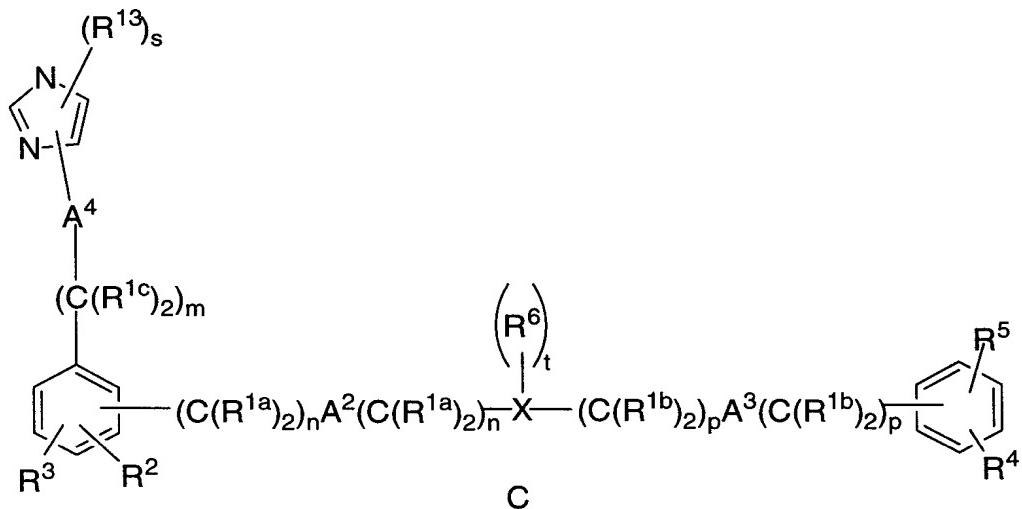
is not a bond;

5

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In another embodiment of the instant invention, the inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula

10 C:



wherein:

R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 15 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;

- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

5

R² is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- 10 d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R⁹S(O)_q, and
- 15 i) OR⁸;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
- 20 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
- NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
- (C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)R⁸, -CH=CH-R⁸ and



25 R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 30 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O-,

- i) N₃,
- j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
- k) CF₃
- l) R⁸O(C=O)-, and
- 5 m) R⁸(O=C)O-;

R⁸ is independently selected from
hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

10

R⁹ is independently selected from
H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and
unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

15

R¹³ is independently selected from
H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted
or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,
-(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆
alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

20

A² is selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- 25 d) -O-,
- e) -(C=O)-,
- f) -O(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -NR⁸-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
- 30 k) -NHC(O)NH-,
- l) -S(O)_q-,
- m) -S(O)_qNH-, and

n) -NHS(O)_q-;

A³ is selected from:

- a) a bond,
- 5 b) -O-,
- c) -S(O)_q-,
- d) -S(O)_qNH-,
- e) -NR⁸-,
- f) -(C=O)-,
- 10 g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -O(C=O)-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-, and
- k) -NHC(O)NH-;

15

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- 20 b) heterocycle, and
- c) a bond;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

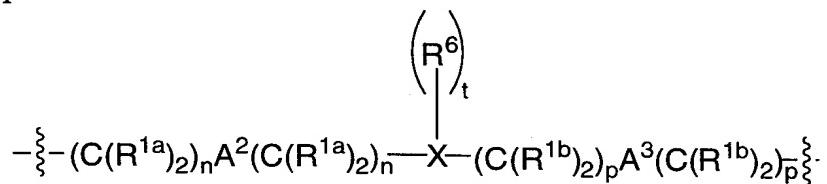
25 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2;

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

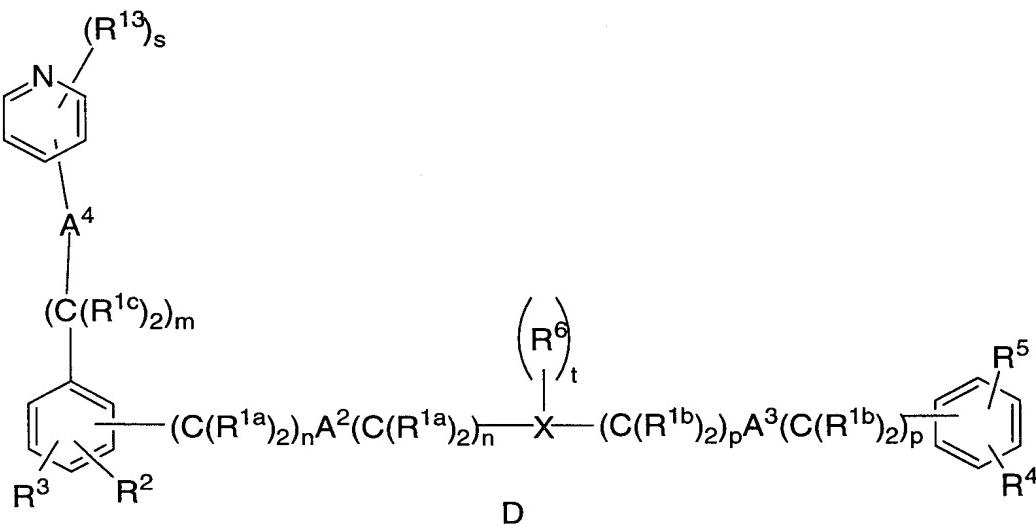
30 provided that



is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

5 In another embodiment of the instant invention, the
inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula
D:



wherein:

10 R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

15

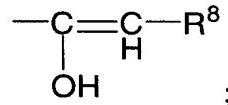
R² is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,

- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 5 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R⁹S(O)_q, and
- i) OR⁸;

10 R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 15 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,

-(C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)R⁸, -CH=CH-R⁸ and ;

R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 25 g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O-,
- i) N₃,
- j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
- k) CF₃
- 30 l) R⁸O(C=O)-, and
- m) R⁸(O=C)O-;

R⁸ is independently selected from

hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from

5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R¹³ is independently selected from

10 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

A² is selected from:

- 15 a) a bond,
b) -HC=CH-,
c) -C≡C-,
d) -O-,
e) -(C=O)-,
f) -O(C=O)-,
g) -(C=O)O-,
h) -NR⁸-,
i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
25 k) -NHC(O)NH-,
l) -S(O)_q-,
m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
n) -NHS(O)_q-;

30 A³ is selected from:

- a) a bond,
b) -O-,
c) -S(O)_q-,
d) -S(O)_qNH-,

- e) -NR⁸-,
- f) -(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -O(C=O)-,
- 5 i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-, and
- k) -NHC(O)NH-;

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

10

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- b) heterocycle, and
- c) a bond;

15

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

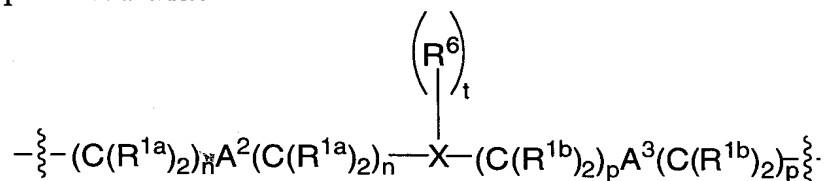
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2; and

20 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

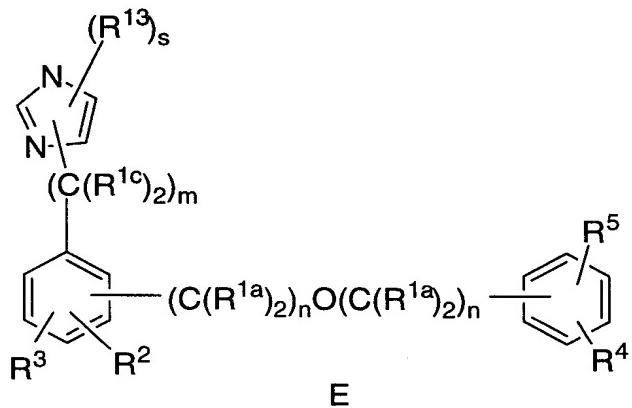
provided that



25 is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In another embodiment of the instant invention, the
30 inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula E:



wherein:

R1a and **R1c** are independently selected from:

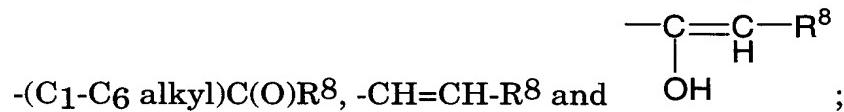
- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

R² is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R⁹S(O)_q, and
- i) OR⁸;

25 **R³, R⁴ and R⁵** are independently selected from:

H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 5 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,



R⁸ is independently selected from

hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,

10 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

15

R¹³ is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted
 or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,
 -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆
 20 alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

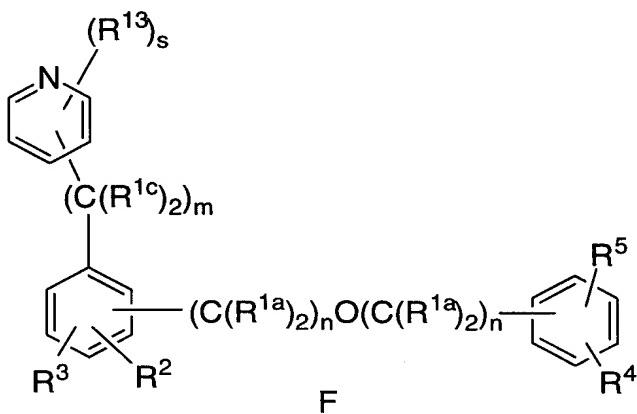
n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2; and

25 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In another embodiment of the instant invention, the
 30 inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula
 F:



wherein:

R^{1a} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

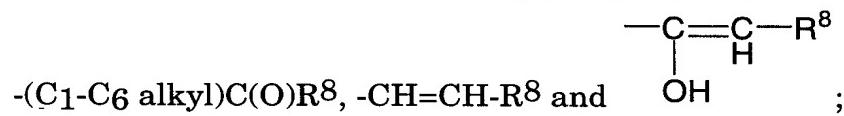
- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

R² is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R⁹S(O)_q, and
- i) OR⁸;

25 R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 5 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,



R⁸ is independently selected from

hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,

10 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

15

R¹³ is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted
 or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,
 -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆
 20 alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

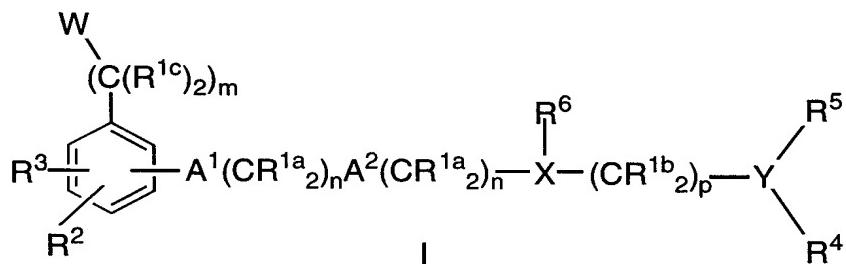
n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2; and

25 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In second embodiment of the instant invention, the
 30 inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula
 I:



wherein:

R^{1a} , R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- 5 a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl; unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle; unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl; C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, or N₃;
- 10 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

15 R^2 is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 20 e) aryl,
- f) heteroaryl,
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- h) C₁-C₆ alkoxy,
- i) N₃,
- 25 j) R⁹S(O)_q,
- k) R⁸C=C, and
- l) R⁸C≡C;

R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are independently selected from:

- a) H,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 5 e) C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- f) C₁-C₆ alkoxy,
- g) N₃,
- h) R⁹S(O)_q,
- i) -HC=CH₂,
- 10 j) -C≡CH,
- k) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- l) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted,
- m) CF₃O-,
- n) CF₃CH₂O-,
- 15 o) C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, and
- p) CF₃;

R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 20 b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 25 g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O,
- i) N₃,
- j) R⁹S(O)_q,
- k) -HC=CH₂,
- 30 l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF₃
- n) R⁸O(C=O), and
- o) R⁸(O=C)O;

R⁸ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

5

A¹ and A² are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- d) O,
- e) S(O)_q,
- f) O(C=O),
- g) (O=C), and
- h) (C=O)O;

15

W is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted;

20

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- b) heteroaryl,
- c) cycloalkyl,
- d) heterocycle, and
- e) a bond;

Y is selected from:

- a) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- c) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted;

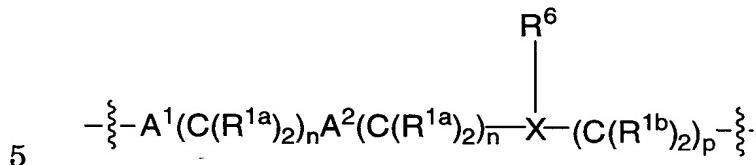
m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

q is 0, 1 or 2;

provided that

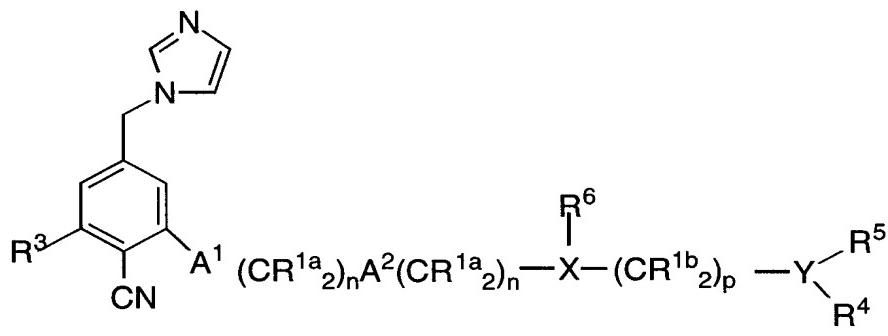


is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

10

A preferred embodiment of the compounds of this invention are illustrated by the formula Ia:



15

wherein:

R^{1a} is selected from: hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

20 R^{1b} is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, R⁸O- or C₂-C₆ alkenyl,

- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, cycloalkyl, alkenyl, or R⁸O-;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from hydrogen, F, Cl, Br, N₃,
5 CN, C₁-C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl and substituted or unsubstituted heterocycle;

R⁵ is selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen, and
b) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted with hydrogen or a group selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, unsubstituted or substituted C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, CF₃, NO₂, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, and CN;

15 R⁶ is independently selected from:
a) hydrogen,

- b) C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, CN, NO₂, and
c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R⁸O-,
20 R⁸C(O)-, or R⁸OC(O)-;

R⁸ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

25 R⁹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -HC=CH-, -C≡C-, O, S(O)_q, O(C=O), and (O=C)O;

30 X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
b) heteroaryl,
c) cycloalkyl,
d) heterocycle, and
35 e) a bond;

Y is selected from:

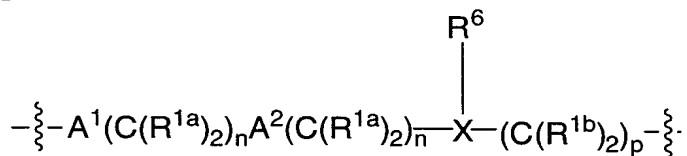
- a) aryl,
- b) substituted aryl,
- 5 c) heterocycle, and
- d) substituted heterocycle;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

10 q is 0, 1, or 2;

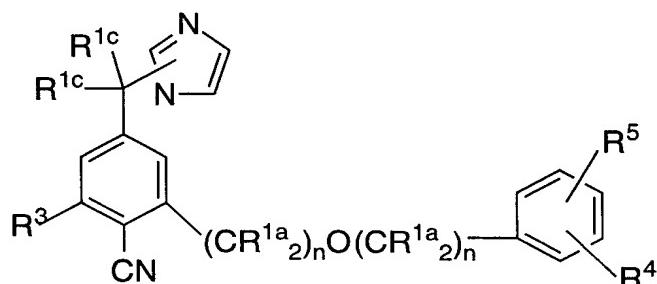
provided that



15 is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

A further embodiment of the compounds of the instant
20 invention is illustrated by Formula Ib:



wherein:

R^{1a} is selected from:

- 5 a) hydrogen,
b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl; unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle; unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl; C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, or N₃;
c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or -R⁸C(O)O-;

10 R^{1c} is independently selected from: H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, and unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl;

15 R³ is selected from hydrogen, F, Cl, Br, N₃, CN, C₁-C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl and substituted or unsubstituted heterocycle;

R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- 20 a) H,
b) halogen,
c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted, and
e) C₁-C₆ alkyl;

25 R⁸ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

30 R⁹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

n is independently selected from: 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
q is 0, 1 or 2;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

Specific examples of the compounds of the invention are:

3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

5 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile

3-(biphenyl-3-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

10 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)ethyl]piperazine

15 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(4-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

20 2-(3-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25 2-(phenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-chlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(4-chlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30 2-(2,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(benzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(biphenyl-2-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

35

2-(phenyl-4-butoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(phenyl-3-propoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

5 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile

2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile

10 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

2-(3-cyanophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 2-(3-bromophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(biphen-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(biphen-4-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

20

2-(3-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25

2-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30

2-(4-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

35

2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

5

2-(3,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

10 2-(1-naphthyoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-fluorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15

2-(3-t-butylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-[3-(N,N-diethylamino)phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

20 2-(3-n-propylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,3-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25

2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30 2-(3,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(4-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

35

2-(5-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-chloro-4,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

5 2-(5-hydroxymethyl-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

10 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-methylphenylamino)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

2-(2-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15

1-(5-chloro-2-methoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea

20 1-(2,5-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea

2-(3-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25 2-(4-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-benzyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-ethynyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30 2-(4-acetyl-3-methyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indazol-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

35 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(8-oxo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indol-7-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-oxo-indan-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indol-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

10 2-[3-(2-hydroxy-ethoxy)-phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(4-imidazol-1-yl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

15 4'-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-biphenyl-4-carbonitrile

N-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-acetamide

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(9-oxo-9*H*-fluoren-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

20 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*phenyl-benzamide

3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

25 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclopropylmethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

2-(5-chloro-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30 *N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-benzenesulfonamide

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(indan-5-yloxy)-benzonitrile

35 3-(9*H*-carbazol-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-methoxy-4-propenyl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(3-oxo-butyl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

10

2-(4-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3,5-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15

2-(pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-(4-phenyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

20

2-(biphen-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25

2-(2-chloro-4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-chlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-ylsulfanyl)-benzonitrile

30

2-(2,4-dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfinyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

35

2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfonyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-methyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,4-dimethyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

5

2-(4-chloro-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(5-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

10 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(4-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

2-(3-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-pyridin-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

N-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-benzamide

2-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-*N*-phenyl-

20 acetamide

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

25

N-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-2-phenyl-acetamide

5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclohexyl-nicotinamide

30

N-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-nicotinamide

2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-(2,4-dimethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-

35 benzonitrile

4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-(1-imidazol-1-yl-1-methyl-ethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5

1-[4-iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzyl]-1*H*-imidazole

acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3*H*-imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester

10

2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-(5-hydroxymethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-

15 benzonitrile

N-{3-[4-cyano-3-(2,3-dimethoxy-phenoxy)-benzyl]-3*H*-imidazol-4-ylmethyl}-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide

20

2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile

2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[1-(4-chloro-phenyl)-2-hydroxy-1-imidazol-1-yl-ethyl]-benzonitrile

25

2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile

2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-

30 ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

2-(2,4-dichloro-phenoxy)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5 4-[amino-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

10 4-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

15 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

15 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

20 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

25 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

25 2-(3-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

30 2-(3-*tert*-butyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

30 2-(3-diethylamino-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

2-(5-chloro-2-oxo-2*H*-[1,2']bipyridinyl-5'-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[2-(2-oxo-2*H*-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

5

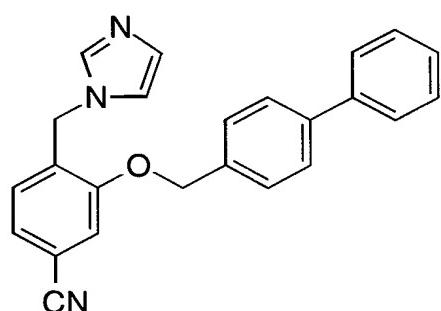
4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-oxo-2*H*- pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

10

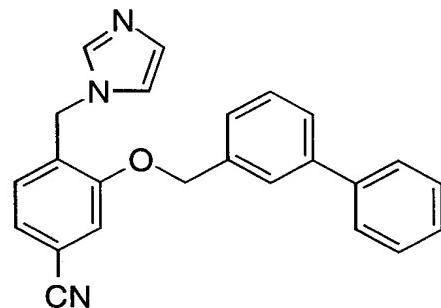
4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(2-oxo-2*H*- pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile
or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The preferred compounds of the instant invention are:

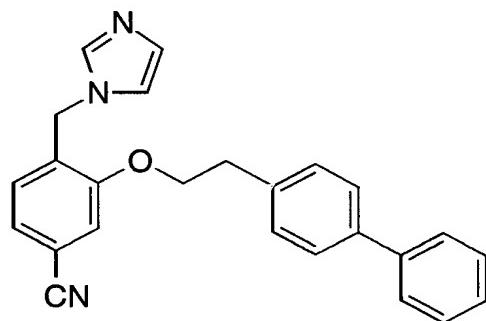
15



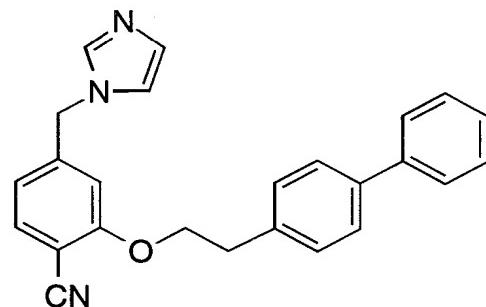
3-(Biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile



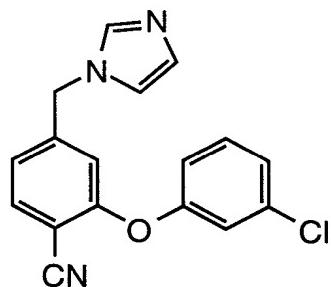
20 3-(Biphenyl-3-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile



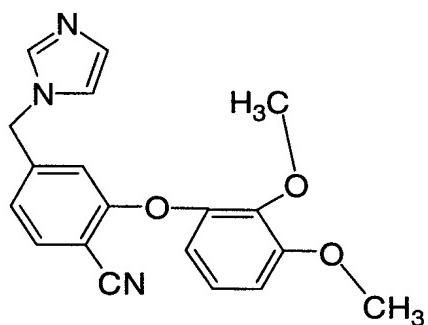
3-(Biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile.



5 2-(Biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile

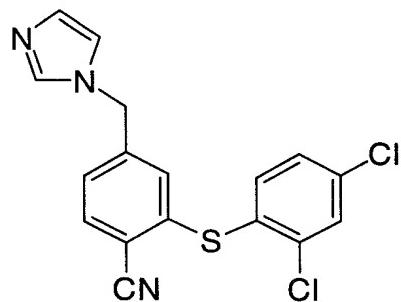


2-(3-Chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile



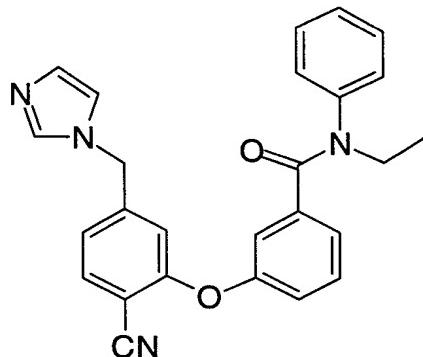
4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5

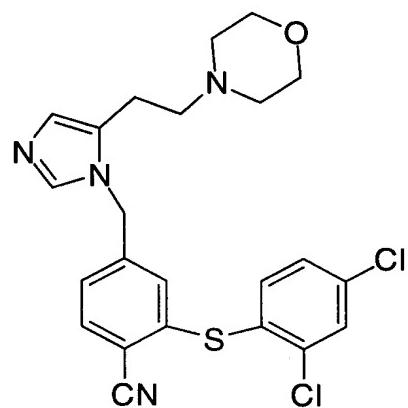


2-(2,4-Dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

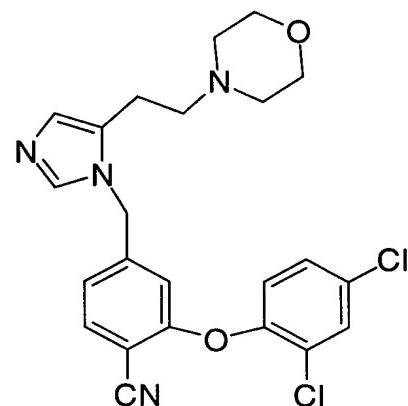
10



3-(2-Cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-ethyl-N-phenyl-benzamide

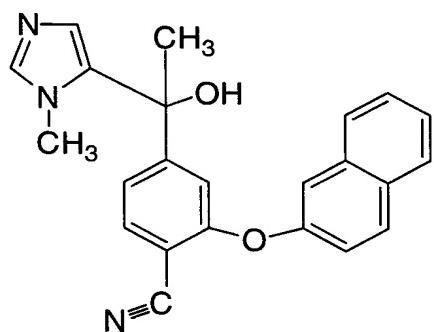


2-(2,4-dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

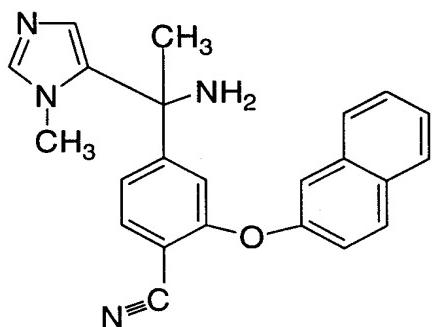


5

2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile



4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile



5 4-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10 The compounds of the present invention may have asymmetric centers and occur as racemates, racemic mixtures, and as individual diastereomers, with all possible isomers, including optical isomers, being included in the present invention. When any variable, substituent or term (e.g. aryl, heterocycle, R^{1a}, R², n, p, etc.) occurs
15 more than one time in a formula or generic structure, its definition at each occurrence is independent of the definition at every other occurrence. Also, combinations of substituents/or variables are permissible only if such combinations result in stable compounds.

As used herein, "alkyl" is intended to include both
20 branched and straight-chain saturated aliphatic hydrocarbon groups having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, unless otherwise specified; "alkoxy" represents an alkyl group having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, unless otherwise indicated, attached through an oxygen bridge. "Halogen" or "halo" as used herein means fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo.

25 As used herein, "aryl" is intended to mean any stable monocyclic, bicyclic or tricyclic carbon ring of up to 7 members in each ring, wherein at least one ring is aromatic. Examples of such aryl

elements include phenyl, naphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, indanonyl, biphenyl, tetralinyl, tetralonyl, fluorenonyl, phenanthryl, anthryl or acenaphthyl.

As used herein, "aralkyl" is intended to mean an aryl moiety, as defined above, attached through a C₁-C₆ alkyl linker, where alkyl is defined above. Examples of aralkyls include, but are not limited to, benzyl, naphthylmethyl and phenylpropyl.

As used herein, "heteroaralkyl" is intended to mean a heteroaryl moiety, as defined below, attached through a C₁-C₆ alkyl linker, where alkyl is defined above. Examples of heteroaralkyls include, but are not limited to, 2-pyridylmethyl, 2-imidazolylethyl, 2-quinolinylmethyl, 2-imidazolylmethyl and the like.

The term heterocycle or heterocyclic, as used herein, represents a stable 5- to 7-membered monocyclic or stable 8- to 11-membered bicyclic heterocyclic ring which is either saturated or unsaturated, and which consists of carbon atoms and from one to four heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S, and including any bicyclic group in which any of the above-defined heterocyclic rings is fused to a benzene ring. The heterocyclic ring may be attached at any heteroatom or carbon atom which results in the creation of a stable structure. Examples of such heterocyclic elements include, but are not limited to, azepinyl, benzimidazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzofurazanyl, benzopyranyl, benzothiopyranyl, benzofuryl, benzothiazolyl, benzothienyl, benzoxazolyl, benzopyrazolyl, chromanyl, cinnolinyl, dibenzofuranyl, dihydrobenzofuryl, dihydrobenzothienyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl sulfone, furyl, imidazolidinyl, imidazolinyl, imidazolyl, indolinyl, indolyl, iso chromanyl, isoindolinyl, isoquinolinyl, isothiazolidinyl, isothiazolyl, isothiazolidinyl, morpholinyl, naphthyridinyl, oxadiazolyl, 2-oxoazepinyl, 2-oxopiperazinyl, 2-oxopiperdinyl, 2-oxopyrrolidinyl, 2-oxopyridyl, 2-oxoquinolinyl, piperidyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolidinyl, pyrazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolyl, quinazolinyl, quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, tetrahydrofuryl, tetrahydroisoquinolinyl, tetrahydroquinolinyl, thiamorpholinyl,

thiamorpholinyl sulfoxide, thiazolyl, thiazolinyl, thienofuryl, thienothienyl, thienyl and triazolyl.

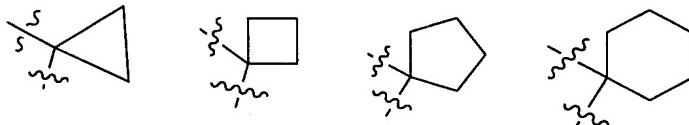
As used herein, "heteroaryl" is intended to mean any stable monocyclic or bicyclic carbon ring of up to 7 members in each ring, wherein at least one ring is aromatic and wherein from one to four carbon atoms are replaced by heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S. Examples of such heterocyclic elements include, but are not limited to, benzimidazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzofurazanyl, benzopyranyl, benzothiopyranyl, benzofuryl, benzothiazolyl, benzothienyl, benzoxazolyl, chromanyl, cinnolinyl, dihydrobenzofuryl, dihydrobenzothienyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl sulfone, furyl, imidazolyl, indolinyl, indolyl, isochromanyl, isoindolinyl, isoquinolinyl, isothiazolyl, naphthyridinyl, oxadiazolyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, quinazolinyl, quinolinyl, quinoxaliny, tetrahydroisoquinolinyl, tetrahydroquinolinyl, thiazolyl, thienofuryl, thienothienyl, and thienyl.

As used herein, the terms "substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl" and "substituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy" are intended to include the branch or straight-chain alkyl group of the specified number of carbon atoms, wherein the carbon atoms may be substituted with F, Cl, Br, CF₃, N₃, NO₂, NH₂, oxo, -OH, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl), S(O)₀₋₂, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)S(O)₀₋₂-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)S(O)₀₋₂(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, -C(O)NH, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)NH-, H₂N-C(NH)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)-, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)CF₃, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)2(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)NH-, aryl, benzyl, heterocycle, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, halo-aryl, halo-benzyl, halo-heterocycle, cyano-aryl, cyano-benzyl and cyano-heterocycle.

As used herein, the terms "substituted aryl", "substituted heteroaryl", "substituted aralkyl" and "substituted heteroaralkyl" are intended to include the cyclic group containing from 1 to 3 substitutents in addition to the point of attachment to the rest of the compound. Such substitutents are preferably selected from the group which includes but is not limited to F, Cl, Br, CF₃, NH₂, N(C₁-C₆ alkyl)₂, NO₂, CN, N₃, C₁-C₂₀ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, -

- OH, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl), S(O)₀₋₂, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)S(O)₀₋₂-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)S(O)₀₋₂(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)NH-, H₂N-C(NH)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)2(C₁-C₆ alkyl)-, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)NH-, aryl, aralkyl,
- 5 heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, halo-aryl, halo-aralkyl, halo-heterocycle, halo-heteroaralkyl, cyano-aryl, cyano-aralkyl, cyano-heterocycle and cyano-heteroaralkyl.

Examples of "spiro C₁-C₆ cycloalkyl" include:



- 10 Lines drawn into the ring systems from substituents (such as from R², R³, R⁴ etc.) indicate that the indicated bond may be attached to any of the substitutable ring carbon atoms or heteroatom.

Preferably, R^{1a} and R^{1b} are independently selected from: hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted aryl or unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl.

Preferably, R^{1c} is selected from hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -OR⁸, -N(R⁸)₂ and unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl.

- 20 Preferably, R² is H, CN or halo. Most preferably, R² is CN.
Preferably, R³ is selected from hydrogen, halo, CN, NO₂, and unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl.

Preferably, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, N₃, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸.

Preferably, R⁶ is selected from: hydrogen, F, Cl, Br, CN, NO₂, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, and C₁-C₆ alkyl.

- 30 Preferably, R¹³ is selected from hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and

-(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸. More preferably, R¹³ is substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸.

5 Preferably, A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, O and S(O)_q. More preferably, A¹ is a bond and A² is selected from O and S(O)_q.

Preferably, A³ is selected from a bond, O, -NR⁸, C(O), -S(O)_q, -C(O)N(R⁸), -N(R⁸)C(O), -S(O)_qNH, -NHS(O)_q, or -NHC(O)NH.

10 Preferably A⁴ is selected from a bond, C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl. Most preferably, A⁴ is a bond.

15 Preferably, W is a heterocycle, selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, triazolyl and thieryl. Most preferably, W is imidazolyl or pyridyl.

Preferably, X is selected from a bond, aryl and heterocycle.

20 Preferably, Y is selected from an unsubstituted or substituted aryl or an unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle. More preferably, Y is selected from phenyl, furyl, thieryl and pyridyl. Most preferably, Y is phenyl.

Preferably, m, n, p, q, r, s and t are independently 0, 1, or 2.

The pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of this invention include the conventional non-toxic salts of the compounds of this invention as formed, e.g., from non-toxic inorganic or organic acids. For example, such conventional non-toxic salts include those derived from inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulfuric, sulfamic, phosphoric, nitric and the like; and the salts prepared from organic acids such as acetic, propionic, succinic, glycolic, stearic, lactic, malic, tartaric, citric, ascorbic, pamoic, maleic, hydroxymaleic, phenylacetic, glutamic, benzoic, salicylic, sulfanilic, 2-acetoxy-benzoic, fumaric, toluenesulfonic, methanesulfonic, ethane disulfonic, oxalic, isethionic, trifluoroacetic and the like.

It is intended that the definition of any substituent or variable (e.g., R^{1a}, R^{1b}, R¹³, n, p, etc.), at a particular location in a molecule, be independent of its definitions elsewhere in that molecule. Thus, -C(R^{1a})₂ represents -CH₂, -CHCH₃, -CHC₂H₅, etc. It is

5 understood that substituents and substitution patterns on the compounds of the instant invention can be selected by one of ordinary skill in the art to provide compounds that are chemically stable and that can be readily synthesized by techniques known in the art, as well as those methods set forth below, from readily available starting materials.

10 The pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of this invention can be synthesized from the compounds of this invention which contain a basic moiety by conventional chemical methods.

Generally, the salts are prepared either by ion exchange chromatography or by reacting the free base with stoichiometric

15 amounts or with an excess of the desired salt-forming inorganic or organic acid in a suitable solvent or various combinations of solvents.

These reactions may be employed in a linear sequence to provide the compounds of the invention or they may be used to synthesize fragments which are subsequently joined by the alkylation reactions

20 described in the Schemes.

Synopsis of Schemes

Schemes 1 to 9 describe the synthesis of compounds of formulae A and I. The starting materials can be obtained from commercial sources or they can be obtained using standard transformations (e.g. esterification of the hydroxy acid) from commercially available materials.

In Scheme 1, amino-hydroxybenzoates of type II can be converted to the corresponding iodide III by treatment with acidic aqueous NaNO₂ followed by the addition of KI. The phenol may then be alkylated by treatment with a base such as NaH or Cs₂CO₃ in an organic solvent (for example DMF) followed by the addition of an electrophile to yield IV. Reduction of the ester of IV using, for example, LiBH₄ in THF then yields the alcohol V which can in turn be treated with Zn(CN)₂ in DMF and a palladium catalyst to give VI. The alcohol of VI can be

converted into a leaving group of VII in a number of ways. One such procedure involves reaction of the alcohol with a sulfonyl chloride in the presence of an organic base (e.g. triethylamine) in an organic solvent such as dichloromethane. A second method requires the reaction of the 5 alcohol with CBr₄ and a phosphine such as triphenyl phosphine in an organic solvent such as dichloromethane. A third method involves reaction of the alcohol with N-bromosuccinimide and dimethyl sulfide in dichloromethane. The reaction of VII with imidazole in a polar solvent such as DMF then affords compounds of formula IA. In addition, VII 10 upon reaction with 4-iodo-1-tritylimidazole in THF with 1,2-dibromoethane, Zn and NiCl₂(PPh₃)₂ and subsequent methanolysis may yield compounds of formula IB.

15 Scheme 2 shows an alternative route for the conversion of III into VI employing chemical transformations described above.

In Scheme 3, the phenol X can be converted to the corresponding triflate XI using trifluoromethane sulfonic anhydride in an organic solvent such as dichloromethane with an organic base such as triethylamine. The triflate may then be converted to the nitrile XII, the ester reduced to XIII and the alcohol transformed to a leaving group 20 as shown in XIV using previously described reactions. Treatment of XIV as above would then produce compounds of formula IC or ID.

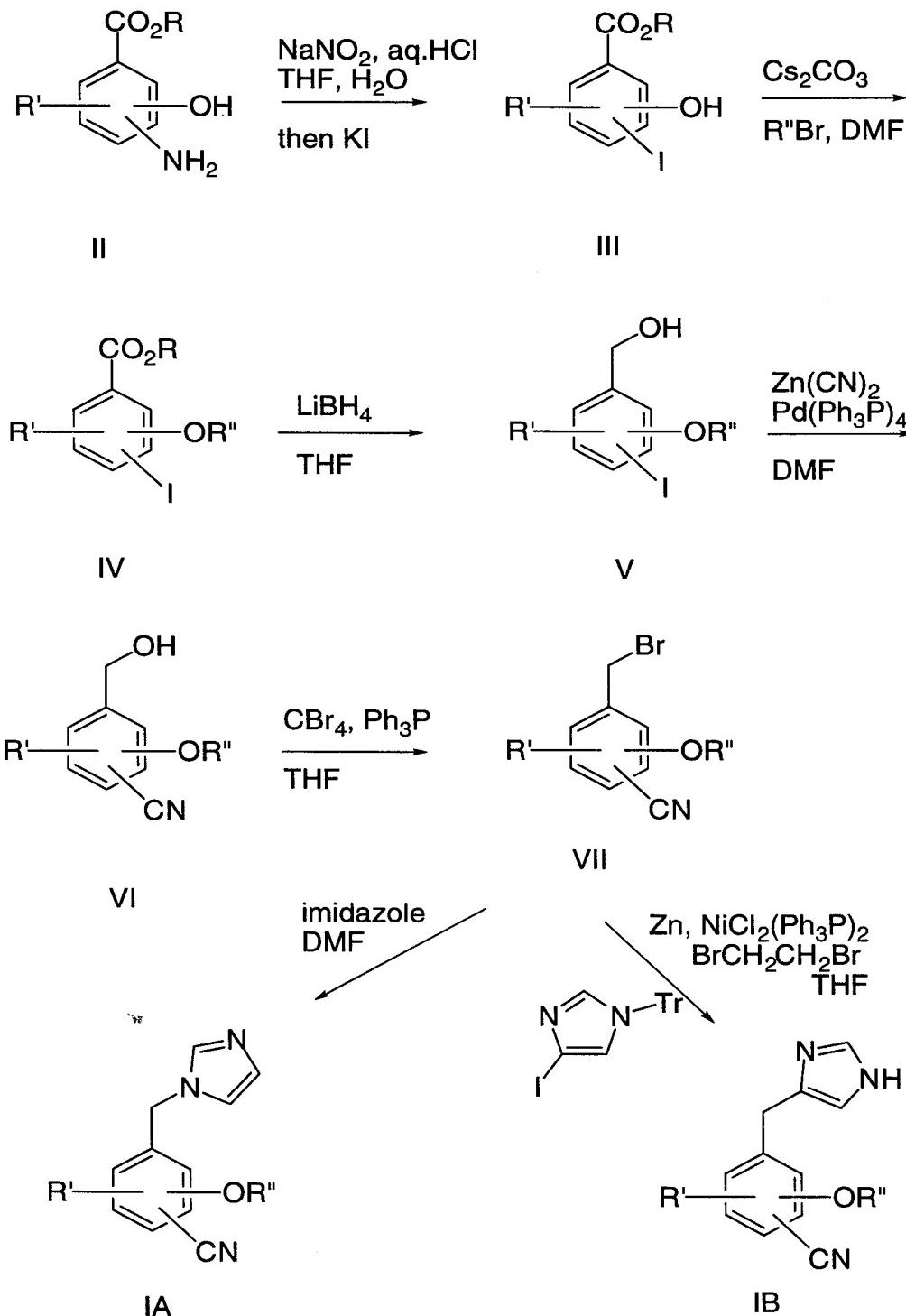
An alternative route for the synthesis of compounds of formula IA and IB is given in Scheme 4. Methyl-hydroxybenzoic acids of structure XV may be bis alkylated by treatment with a base such as 25 NaH or Cs₂CO₃ in an organic solvent (for example DMF) followed by the addition of an electrophile to yield XVI saponification using aqueous hydroxide then affords the acid XVII. Acid XVII is then converted to the primary amide XIX via the acid chloride XVIII (prepared with thionyl chloride in a solvent such as toluene then a reaction with 30 ammonia in, for example, chloroform). Treatment of XIX with thionyl chloride in DMF results in the nitrile XX which can be brominated at the benzylic position using, for example, N-bromosuccinimide and benzoyl peroxide in carbon tetrachloride. Transformations, as before, then yield IA or IB.

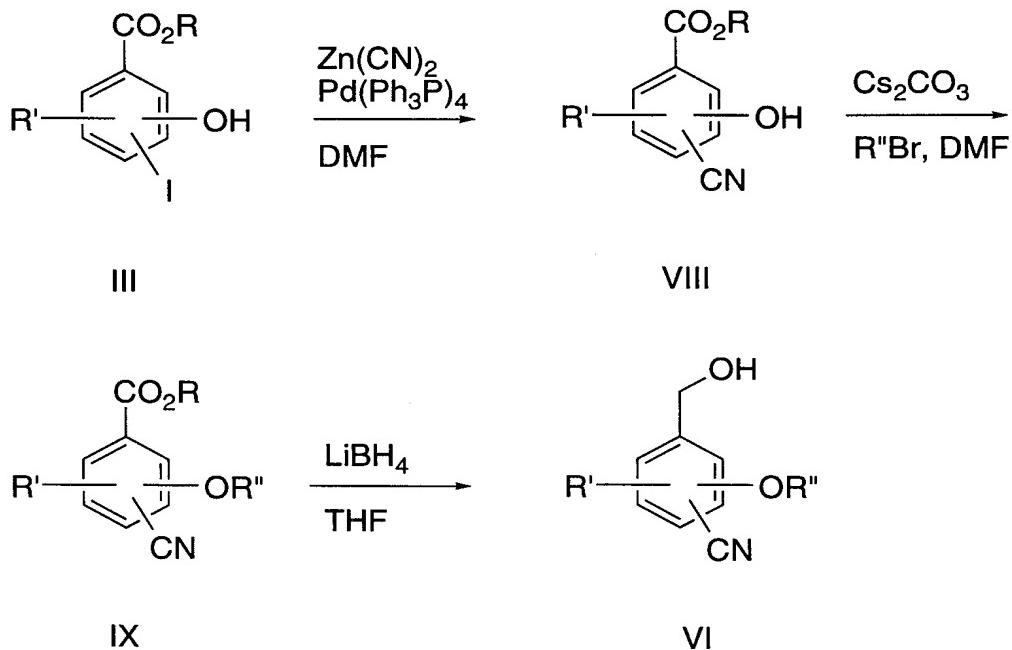
An alternative route for the synthesis of compounds of formula IA and IB is shown in Scheme 5 which incorporates the reaction steps described above but alters the order of these transformations to give XXIV which is converted to IA by treatment 5 with a halide or mesylate.

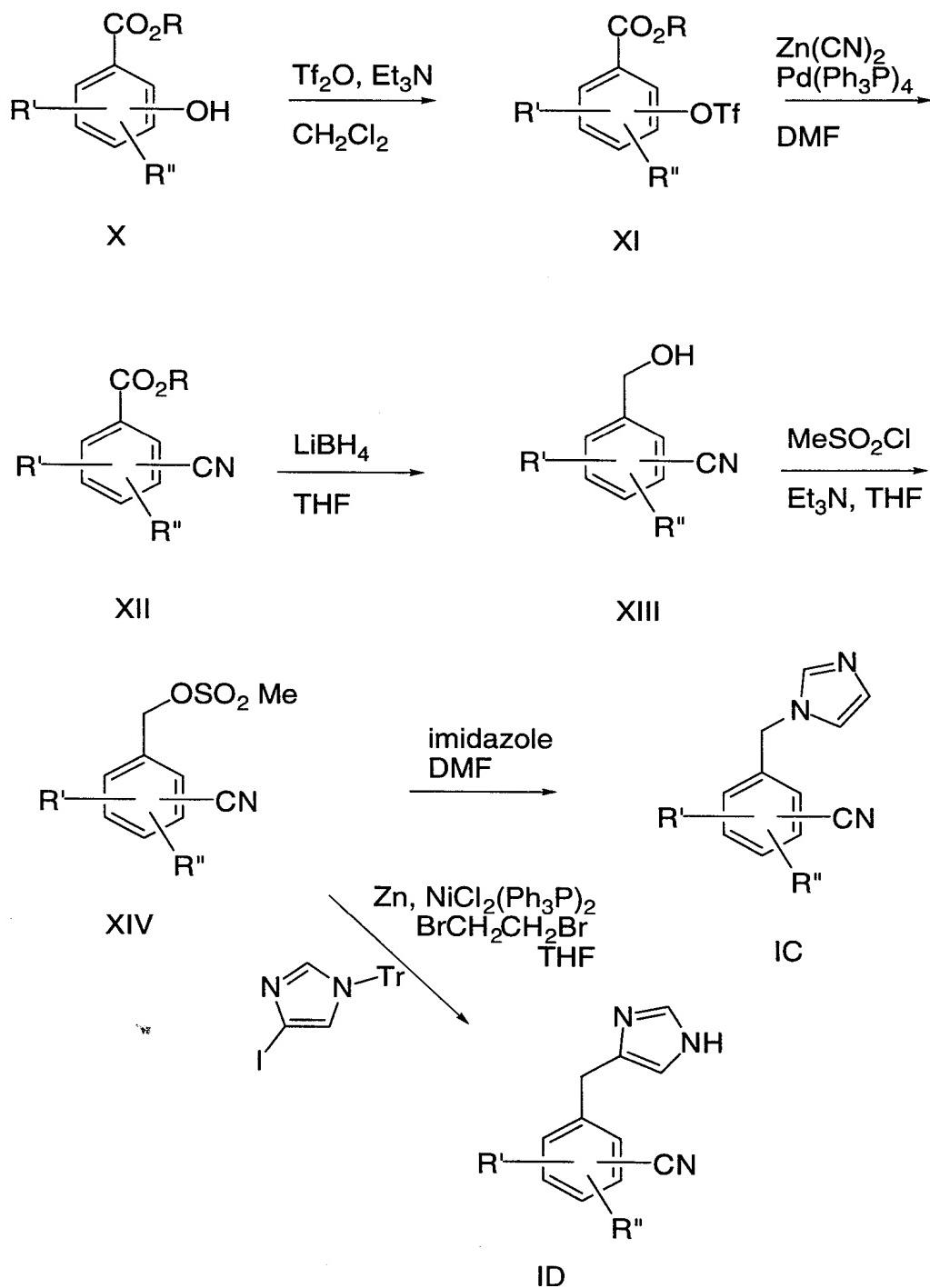
Two routes to compounds containing a diaryl ether linkage as illustrated in XXVII are described in Scheme 6. The bromo fluoride XXV is transformed to the fluoro nitrile with zinc cyanide, then converted to ID in a series of transformations described in previous 10 schemes.

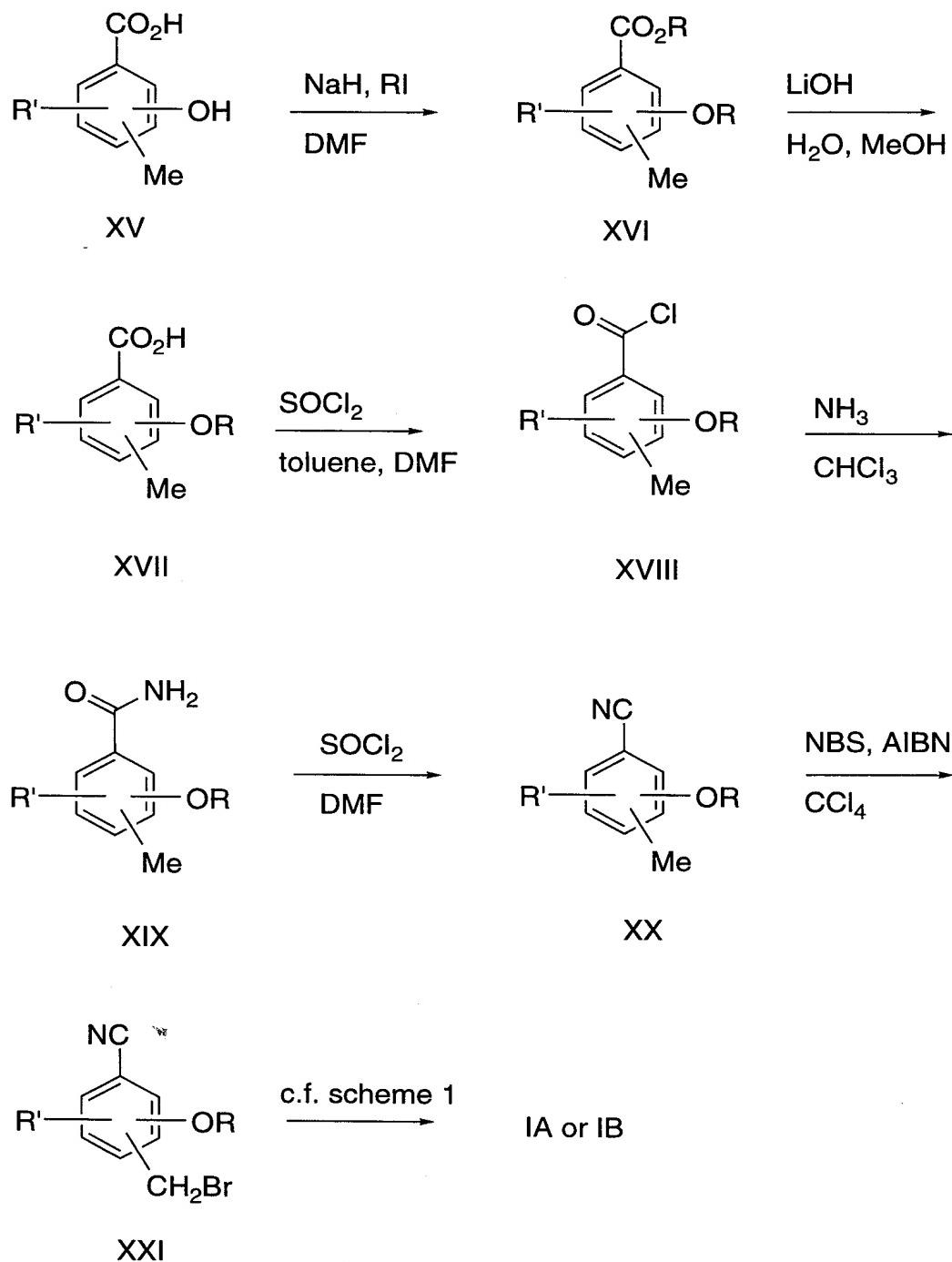
Scheme 7 illustrates yet another route for the synthesis of compounds of formula IA.

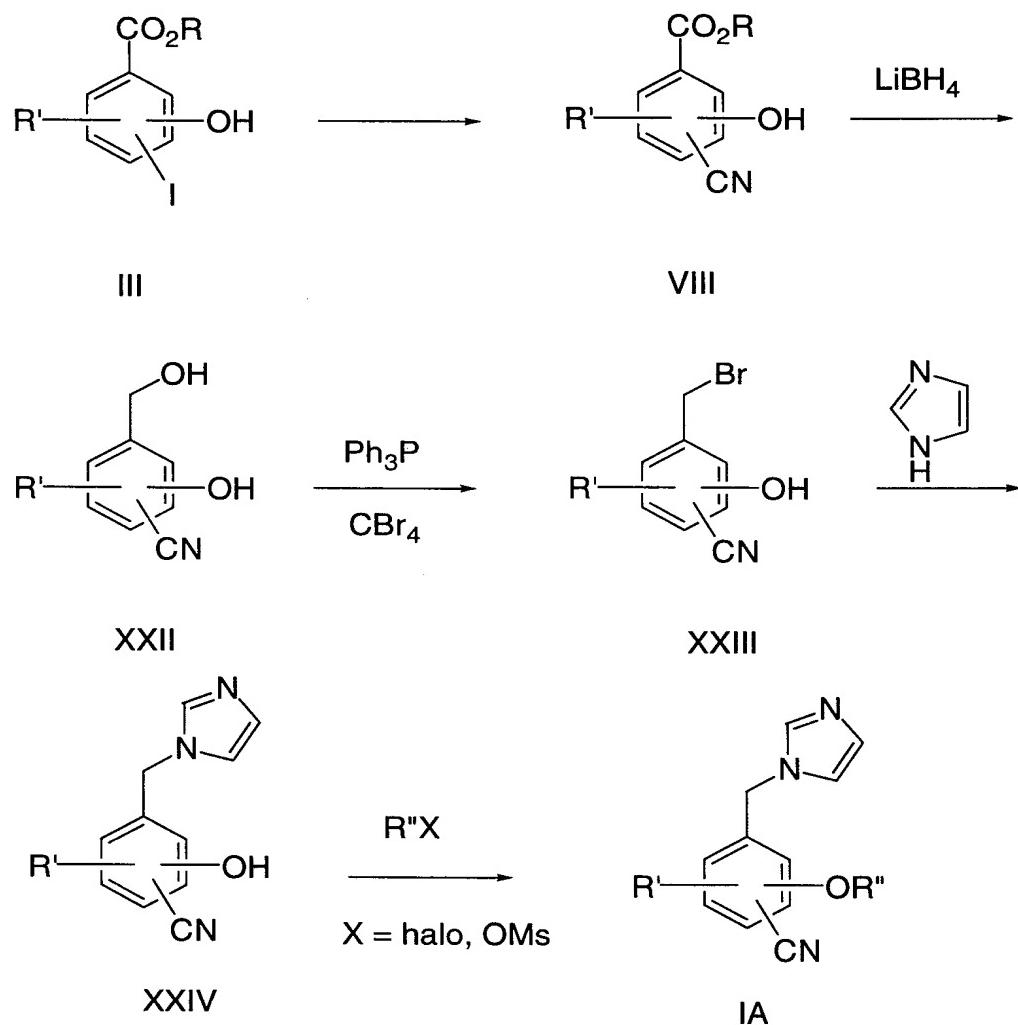
Schemes 8 and 9 describe routes for the preparation of compounds XXXIX and XXXX which contain a heteroatom at the 15 benzylic position between W and the phenyl ring of IA.

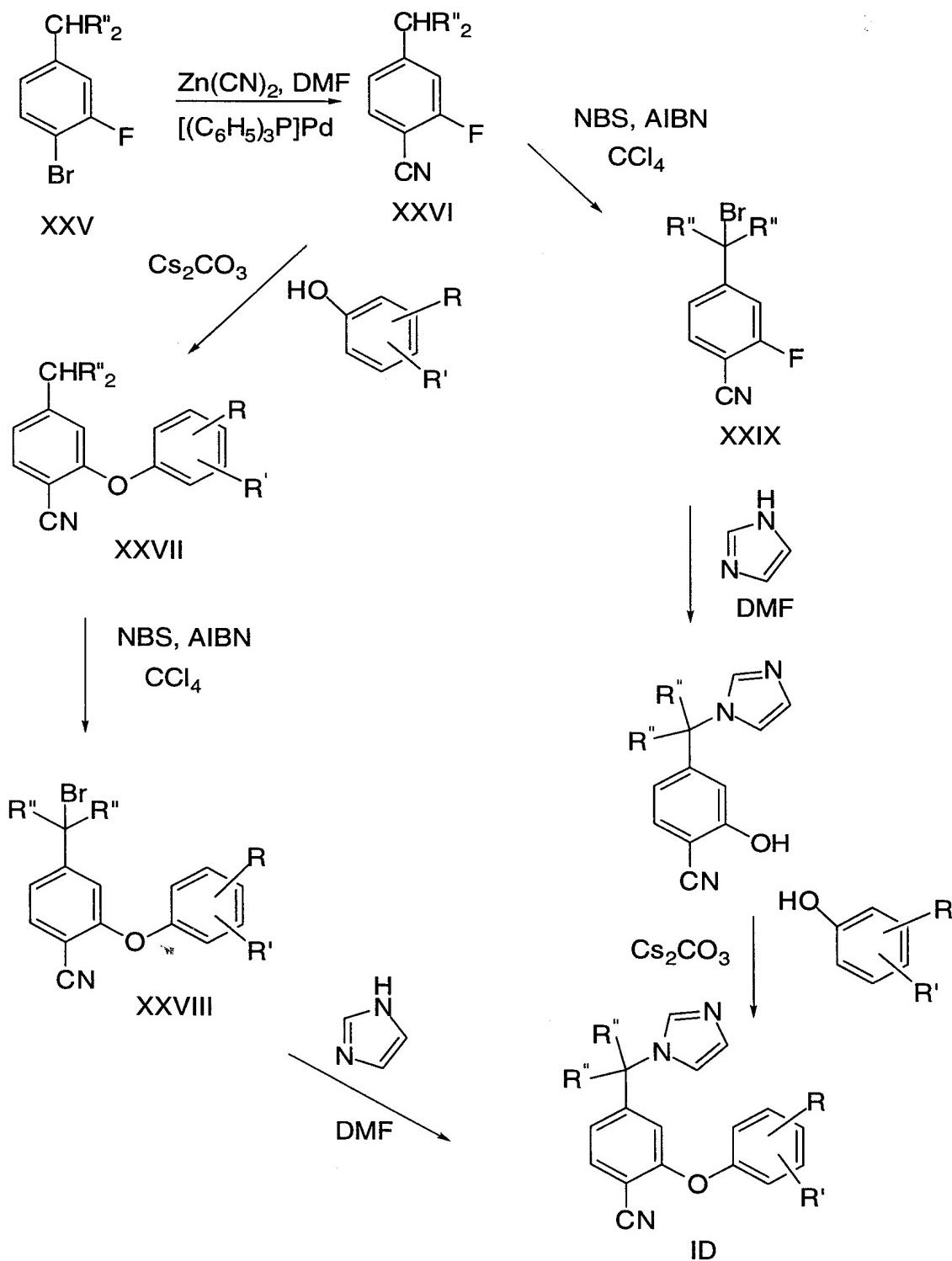
SCHEME 1

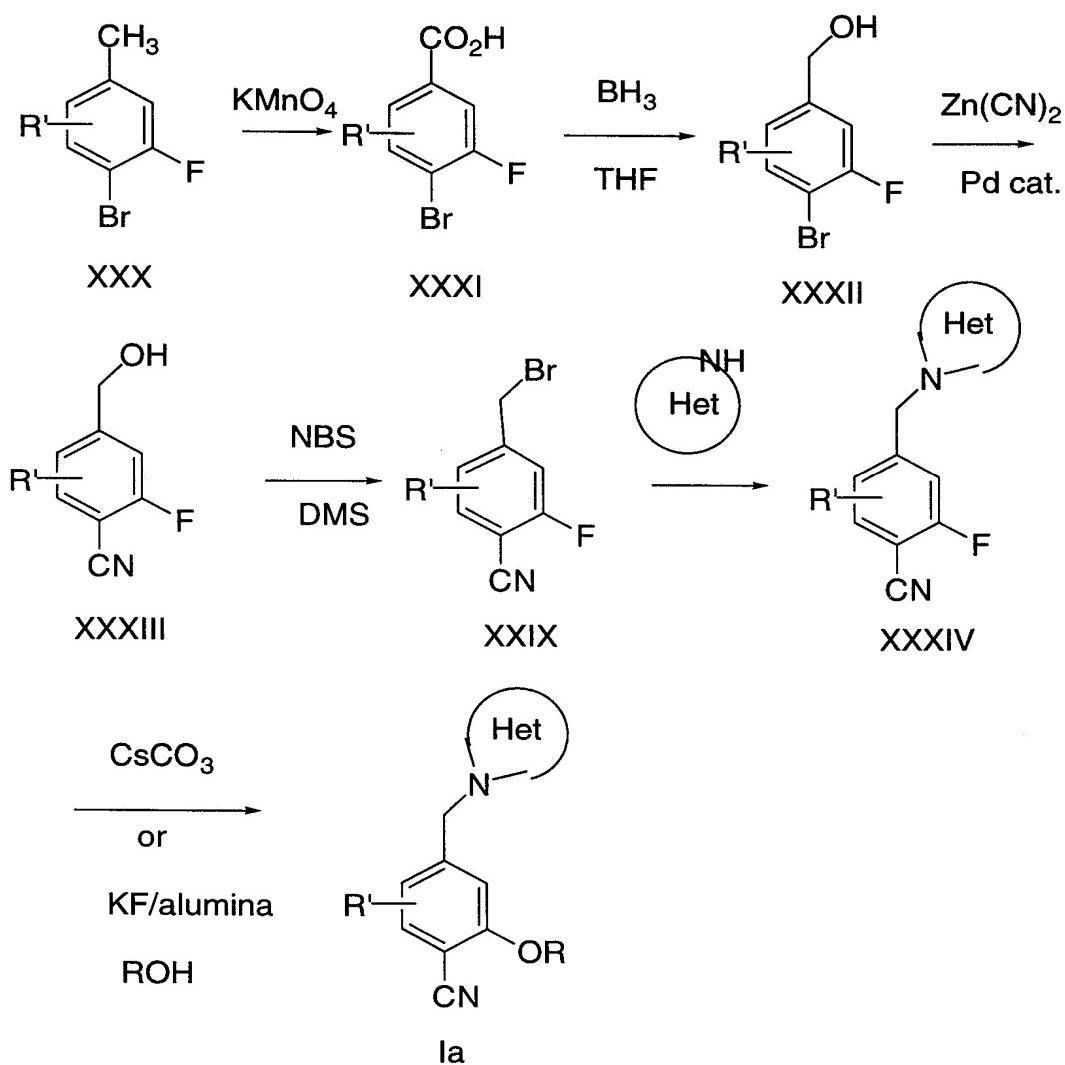
SCHEME 2

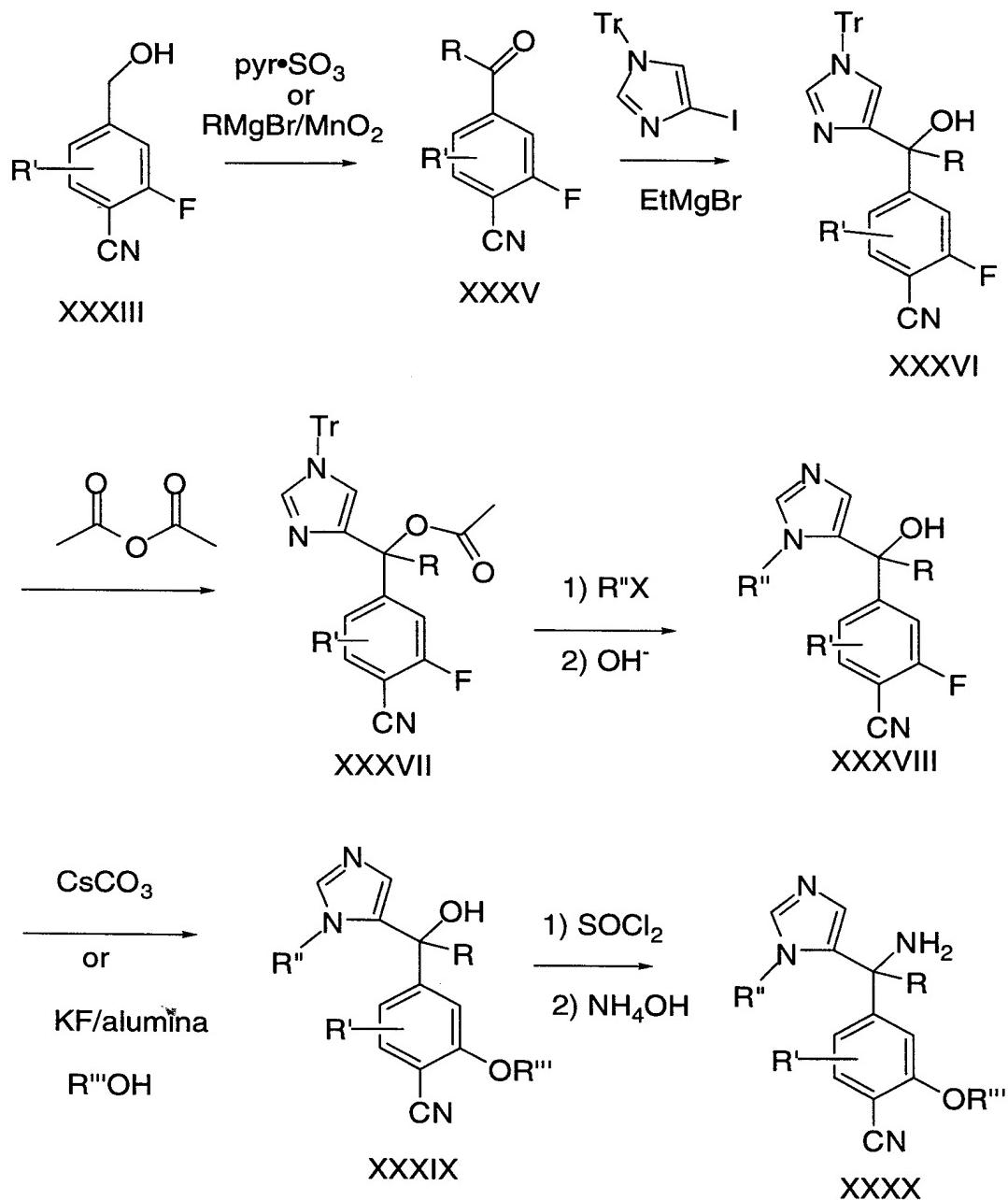
SCHEME 3

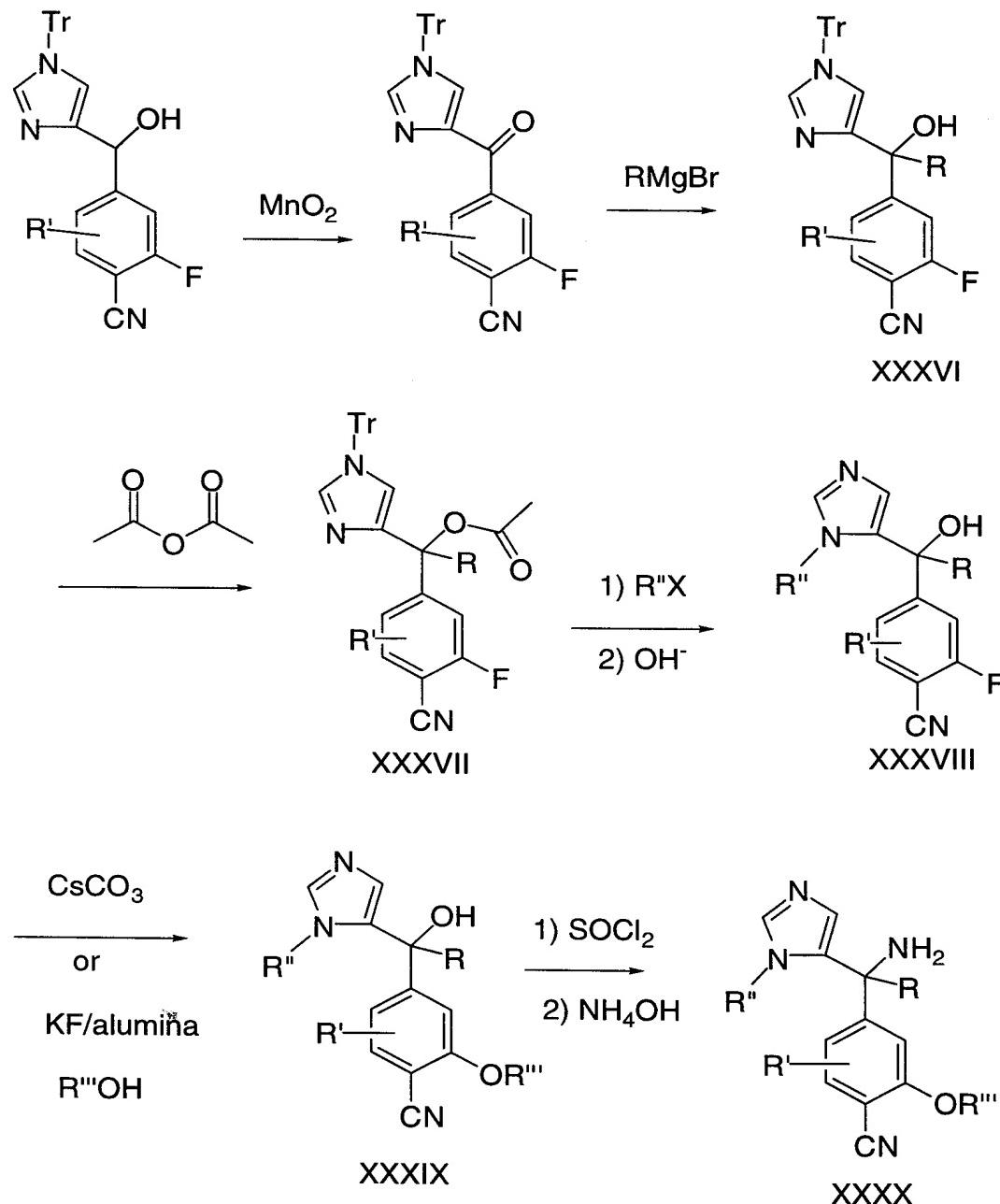
SCHEME 4

SCHEME 5

SCHEME 6

SCHEME 7

SCHEME 8

SCHEME 9

In the above Schemes, it is understood that

R independently represents R^{1c} or its protected precursors thereof;

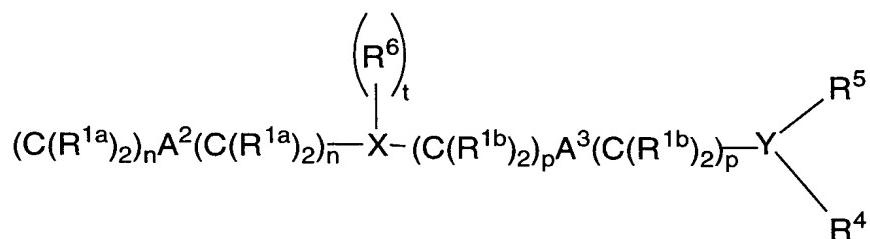
5

R' independently represents R³ or its protected precursors thereof;

10

R" independently represents R¹³ or its protected precursors thereof;

R''' independently represents the following moiety:



15

In a preferred embodiment of the instant invention the compounds of this instant invention are selective inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase. A compound is considered a selective inhibitor of farnesyl-protein transferase, for example, when its *in vitro* farnesyl-protein transferase inhibitory activity, as assessed by the assay described in Example 29, is at least 100 times greater than the *in vitro* activity of the same compound against geranylgeranyl-protein transferase-type I in the assay described in Example 30. Preferably, a selective compound exhibits at least 1000 times greater activity against one of the enzymatic activities when comparing geranylgeranyl-protein transferase-type I inhibition and farnesyl-protein transferase inhibition.

20

25

In another preferred embodiment of the instant invention the compounds of this instant invention are dual inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase and geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I. Such

a dual inhibitor will exhibit certain characteristics when assessed in *in vitro* assays, which are dependent on the type of assay employed.

- In a SEAP assay, such as described in Example 33, it is preferred that the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 12μM against K4B-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells. More preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) against K4B-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells which is more than about 5 times lower than the inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) against Myr-Ras
- 10 dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells. Also more preferably, in a SEAP assay, the dual inhibitor compound has an inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 10 nM against H-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells.

- In a GGTase plus anion assay, such as described in Example 30, it is preferred that the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 5 μM against transfer of a geranylgeranyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate comprising a CAAX^G motif by geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I in the presence of a modulating anion. More preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 1 μM against transfer of a geranylgeranyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate comprising a CAAX^G motif by geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I in the presence of a modulating anion. Preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) in the in vitro assay as described in Example 29 that is less than about 1 μM against transfer of a farnesyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate, comprising a CAAX^F motif, by farnesyl-protein transferase. More preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) that is less than about 100nM against transfer of a farnesyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate, comprising a CAAX^F motif, by farnesyl-protein transferase. Also preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC₅₀) in the in vitro assay as described in Example 32, that is less than about 100 nM against the anchorage independent growth of H-ras-transformed mammalian fibroblasts.

The protein or peptide substrate utilized in the instant assay may incorporate any CAAX motif that is geranylgeranylated by GGTase-I. The term "CAAX^G" will refer to such motifs that may be geranylgeranylated by GGTase-I. It is understood that some of the 5 "CAAX^G" containing protein or peptide substrates may also be farnesylated by farnesyl-protein transferase. In particular such "CAAX^G" motifs include (the corresponding human protein is in parentheses): CVIM (K4B-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 1), CVLL (mutated H-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 2), CVVM (N-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 3), CIIM (K4A-Ras) 10 (SEQ.ID.NO.: 4), CLLL (Rap-IA) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 5), CQLL (Rap-IB) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 6), CSIM (SEQ.ID.NO.: 7), CAIM (SEQ.ID.NO.: 8), CKVL (SEQ.ID.NO.: 9), and CLIM (PFX) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 10). Preferably, the CAAX motif is CVIM.

As used herein, the term "CAAX^F" is used to designate a 15 protein or peptide substrate that incorporates four amino acid C-terminus motif that is farnesylated by farnesyl-protein transferase. It is understood that certain of the "CAAX^F" containing protein or peptide substrates may also be geranylgeranylated by GGTase-I. In particular such "CAAX^F" motifs include (the corresponding human protein is in 20 parentheses): CVLS (H-ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 11), CVIM (K4B-Ras) and CVVM (N-Ras).

The instant compounds are useful as pharmaceutical agents for mammals, especially for humans. These compounds may be administered to patients for use in the treatment of cancer. Examples 25 of the type of cancer which may be treated with the compounds of this invention include, but are not limited to, colorectal carcinoma, exocrine pancreatic carcinoma, myeloid leukemias and neurological tumors. Such tumors may arise by mutations in the *ras* genes themselves, mutations in the proteins that can regulate Ras activity (i.e., 30 neurofibromin (NF-1), neu, src, ab1, lck, fyn) or by other mechanisms.

The compounds of the instant invention inhibit a prenyl-protein transferase and, in particular, the farnesylation of the oncogene protein Ras. The instant compounds may also inhibit tumor

angiogenesis, thereby affecting the growth of tumors (J. Rak et al. *Cancer Research*, 55: 4575-4580 (1995)). Such anti-angiogenesis properties of the instant compounds may also be useful in the treatment of certain forms of vision deficit related to retinal vascularization.

5 The compounds of this invention are also useful for inhibiting other proliferative diseases, both benign and malignant, wherein Ras proteins are aberrantly activated as a result of oncogenic mutation in other genes (i.e., the Ras gene itself is not activated by mutation to an oncogenic form) with said inhibition being accomplished
10 by the administration of an effective amount of the compounds of the invention to a mammal in need of such treatment. For example, a component of NF-1 is a benign proliferative disorder.

15 The instant compounds may also be useful in the treatment of certain viral infections, in particular in the treatment of hepatitis delta and related viruses (J.S. Glenn et al. *Science*, 256:1331-1333 (1992).

20 The compounds of the instant invention are also useful in the prevention of restenosis after percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty by inhibiting neointimal formation (C. Indolfi et al. *Nature medicine*, 1:541-545(1995).

25 The instant compounds may also be useful in the treatment and prevention of polycystic kidney disease (D.L. Schaffner et al. *American Journal of Pathology*, 142:1051-1060 (1993) and B. Cowley, Jr. et al. *FASEB Journal*, 2:A3160 (1988)).

30 The instant compounds may also be useful for the treatment of fungal infections.

35 The instant compounds may also be useful as inhibitors of proliferation of vascular smooth muscle cells and therefore useful in the prevention and therapy of arteriosclerosis and diabetic vascular pathologies.

40 The compounds of this invention may be administered to mammals, preferably humans, either alone or, preferably, in combination with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or diluents, in a pharmaceutical composition, according to standard pharmaceutical practice. The compounds can be administered orally or
45 parenterally, including the intravenous, intramuscular,

intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, rectal and topical routes of administration.

The pharmaceutical compositions containing the active ingredient may be in a form suitable for oral use, for example, as tablets, 5 troches, lozenges, aqueous or oily suspensions, dispersible powders or granules, emulsions, hard or soft capsules, or syrups or elixirs. Compositions intended for oral use may be prepared according to any method known to the art for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions and such compositions may contain one or more agents 10 selected from the group consisting of sweetening agents, flavoring agents, coloring agents and preserving agents in order to provide pharmaceutically elegant and palatable preparations. Tablets contain the active ingredient in admixture with non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable excipients which are suitable for the manufacture of tablets. 15 These excipients may be for example, inert diluents, such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate, lactose, calcium phosphate or sodium phosphate; granulating and disintegrating agents, for example, corn starch, or alginic acid; binding agents, for example starch, gelatin or acacia, and lubricating agents, for example, magnesium stearate, 20 stearic acid or talc. The tablets may be uncoated or they may be coated by known techniques to delay disintegration and absorption in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period. For example, a time delay material such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate may be employed.

25 Formulations for oral use may also be presented as hard gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with an inert solid diluent*, for example, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water or an oil medium, for example peanut oil, liquid paraffin, or 30 olive oil.

Aqueous suspensions contain the active material in admixture with excipients suitable for the manufacture of aqueous suspensions. Such excipients are suspending agents, for example sodium carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, sodium alginate, polyvinyl-pyrrolidone, gum tragacanth and 35

gum acacia; dispersing or wetting agents may be a naturally-occurring phosphatide, for example lecithin, or condensation products of an alkylene oxide with fatty acids, for example polyoxyethylene stearate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with long chain aliphatic 5 alcohols, for example heptadecaethylene-oxyacetanol, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and a hexitol such as polyoxyethylene sorbitol monooleate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, for example polyethylene sorbitan 10 monooleate. The aqueous suspensions may also contain one or more preservatives, for example ethyl, or n-propyl p-hydroxybenzoate, one or more coloring agents, one or more flavoring agents, and one or more sweetening agents, such as sucrose, saccharin or aspartame.

Oily suspensions may be formulated by suspending the 15 active ingredient in a vegetable oil, for example arachis oil, olive oil, sesame oil or coconut oil, or in mineral oil such as liquid paraffin. The oily suspensions may contain a thickening agent, for example beeswax, hard paraffin or cetyl alcohol. Sweetening agents such as those set forth above, and flavoring agents may be added to provide a palatable oral 20 preparation. These compositions may be preserved by the addition of an anti-oxidant such as ascorbic acid.

Dispersible powders and granules suitable for preparation 25 of an aqueous suspension by the addition of water provide the active ingredient in admixture with a dispersing or wetting agent, suspending agent and one or more preservatives. Suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents are exemplified by those already mentioned above. Additional excipients, for example sweetening, flavoring and coloring agents, may also be present.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may also 30 be in the form of an oil-in-water emulsions. The oily phase may be a vegetable oil, for example olive oil or arachis oil, or a mineral oil, for example liquid paraffin or mixtures of these. Suitable emulsifying agents may be naturally-occurring phosphatides, for example soy beans, lecithin, and esters or partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol 35 anhydrides, for example sorbitan monooleate, and condensation

products of the said partial esters with ethylene oxide, for example polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate. The emulsions may also contain sweetening and flavouring agents.

Syrups and elixirs may be formulated with sweetening
5 agents, for example glycerol, propylene glycol, sorbitol or sucrose. Such formulations may also contain a demulcent, a preservative and flavoring and coloring agents.

The pharmaceutical compositions may be in the form of a sterile injectable aqueous or oleagenous suspension. This suspension
10 may be formulated according to the known art using those suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents which have been mentioned above. The sterile injectable preparation may also be a sterile injectable solution or suspension in a non-toxic parenterally-acceptable diluent or solvent, for example as a solution in 1,3-butane diol. Among
15 the acceptable vehicles and solvents that may be employed are water, Ringer's solution and isotonic sodium chloride solution. In addition, sterile, fixed oils are conventionally employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose any bland fixed oil may be employed including synthetic mono- or diglycerides. In addition, fatty acids such
20 as oleic acid find use in the preparation of injectables.

The injectable suspensions or solutions may be introduced into a patient's blood-stream by local bolus injection. Alternatively, it may be advantageous to administer the suspensions or solution in such a way as to maintain a constant circulating concentration of the instant
25 compound. In order to maintain such a constant concentration, a continuous intravenous delivery device may be utilized. An example of such a device is the Deltec CADD-PLUS™ model 5400 intravenous pump.

Compounds of Formula A may also be administered in the
30 form of a suppositories for rectal administration of the drug. These compositions can be prepared by mixing the drug with a suitable non-irritating excipient which is solid at ordinary temperatures but liquid at the rectal temperature and will therefore melt in the rectum to release the drug. Such materials are cocoa butter and polyethylene glycols.

For topical use, creams, ointments, jellies, solutions or suspensions, etc., containing the compound of Formula A are employed. (For purposes of this application, topical application shall include mouth washes and gargles.)

5 The compounds for the present invention can be administered in intranasal form via topical use of suitable intranasal vehicles, or via transdermal routes, using those forms of transdermal skin patches well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. To be administered in the form of a transdermal delivery system, the dosage 10 administration will, of course, be continuous rather than intermittent throughout the dosage regimen. Compounds of the present invention may also be delivered as a suppository employing bases such as cocoa butter, glycerinated gelatin, hydrogenated vegetable oils, mixtures of polyethylene glycols of various molecular weights and fatty acid esters of 15 polyethylene glycol.

As used herein, the term "composition" is intended to encompass a product comprising the specified ingredients in the specific amounts, as well as any product which results, directly or 20 indirectly, from combination of the specific ingredients in the specified amounts.

When a compound according to this invention is administered into a human subject, the daily dosage will normally be determined by the prescribing physician with the dosage generally 25 varying according to the age, weight, sex and response of the individual patient, as well as the severity of the patient's symptoms.

In one exemplary application, a suitable amount of compound is administered to a mammal undergoing treatment for cancer. Administration occurs in an amount between about 0.1 mg/kg 30 of body weight to about 60 mg/kg of body weight per day, preferably of between 0.5 mg/kg of body weight to about 40 mg/kg of body weight per day.

The compounds of the instant invention may also be co-administered with other well known therapeutic agents that are 35 selected for their particular usefulness against the condition that is

being treated. For example, the compounds of the instant invention may also be co-administered with other well known cancer therapeutic agents that are selected for their particular usefulness against the condition that is being treated. Included in such combinations of therapeutic agents are combinations of the instant prenyl-protein transferase inhibitors and an antineoplastic agent. It is also understood that such a combination of antineoplastic agent and inhibitor of a prenyl-protein transferase may be used in conjunction with other methods of treating cancer and/or tumors, including radiation therapy and surgery.

Examples of an antineoplastic agent include, in general, microtubule-stabilizing agents (such as paclitaxel (also known as Taxol®), docetaxel (also known as Taxotere®), epothilone A, epothilone B, desoxyepothilone A, desoxyepothilone B or their derivatives); microtubule-disruptor agents; alkylating agents, anti-metabolites; epidophyllotoxin; an antineoplastic enzyme; a topoisomerase inhibitor; procarbazine; mitoxantrone; platinum coordination complexes; biological response modifiers and growth inhibitors; hormonal/anti-hormonal therapeutic agents and haematopoietic growth factors.

Example classes of antineoplastic agents include, for example, the anthracycline family of drugs, the vinca drugs, the mitomycins, the bleomycins, the cytotoxic nucleosides, the taxanes, the epothilones, discodermolide, the pteridine family of drugs, diarynes and the podophyllotoxins. Particularly useful members of those classes include, for example, doxorubicin, carminomycin, daunorubicin, aminopterin, methotrexate, methopterin, dichloro-methotrexate, mitomycin C, porfiromycin, 5-fluorouracil, 6-mercaptopurine, gemcitabine, cytosine arabinoside, podophyllotoxin or podo-phyllotoxin derivatives such as etoposide, etoposide phosphate or teniposide, melphalan, vinblastine, vincristine, leurosidine, vindesine, leurosine, paclitaxel and the like. Other useful antineoplastic agents include estramustine, cisplatin, carboplatin, cyclophosphamide, bleomycin, tamoxifen, ifosamide, melphalan, hexamethyl melamine, thiotepa, cytarabin, idatrexate, trimetrexate, dacarbazine, L-asparaginase,

camptothecin, CPT-11, topotecan, ara-C, bicalutamide, flutamide, leuprolide, pyridobenzoinole derivatives, interferons and interleukins.

The preferred class of antineoplastic agents is the taxanes and the preferred antineoplastic agent is paclitaxel.

5 Radiation therapy, including x-rays or gamma rays which are delivered from either an externally applied beam or by implantation of tiny radioactive sources, may also be used in combination with the instant inhibitor of a prenyl-protein transferase alone to treat cancer.

10 Additionally, compounds of the instant invention may also be useful as radiation sensitizers, as described in WO 97/38697, published on October 23, 1997, and herein incorporated by reference.

15 The instant compounds may also be useful in combination with other inhibitors of parts of the signaling pathway that links cell surface growth factor receptors to nuclear signals initiating cellular proliferation. Thus, the instant compounds may be utilized in combination with farnesyl pyrophosphate competitive inhibitors of the activity of farnesyl-protein transferase or in combination with a compound which has Raf antagonist activity. The instant compounds may also be co-administered with compounds that are selective
20 inhibitors of geranylgeranyl protein transferase. In particular, if the compound of the instant invention is a selective inhibitor of farnesyl-protein transferase, co-administered with a compound(s) that is a selective inhibitor of geranylgeranyl protein transferase may provide the therapeutic effect of administration of a dual inhibitor as described
25 hereinabove, and thus offer certain advantages over administration of only the compound of the instant invention.

30 In particular, the compounds disclosed in the following patents and publications may be useful as farnesyl pyrophosphate-competitive inhibitor component of the instant composition: U.S. Ser. Nos. 08/254,228 and 08/435,047. Those patents and publications are incorporated herein by reference.

35 In practicing methods of this invention, which comprise administering, simultaneously or sequentially or in any order, two or more of a protein substrate-competitive inhibitor and a farnesyl pyrophosphate-competitive inhibitor, such administration can be orally

or parenterally, including intravenous, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, rectal and topical routes of administration. It is preferred that such administration be orally. It is more preferred that such administration be orally and simultaneously. When the protein substrate-competitive inhibitor and farnesyl pyrophosphate-competitive inhibitor are administered sequentially, the administration of each can be by the same method or by different methods.

The instant compounds may also be useful in combination with an integrin antagonist for the treatment of cancer, as described in 10 U.S. Ser. No. 09/055,487, filed April 6, 1998, which is incorporated herein by reference.

As used herein the term an integrin antagonist refers to compounds which selectively antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to an integrin(s) that is involved in the 15 regulation of angiogenesis, or in the growth and invasiveness of tumor cells. In particular, the term refers to compounds which selectively antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to the $\alpha v\beta 3$ integrin, which selectively antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to the $\alpha v\beta 5$ integrin, which antagonize, 20 inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to both the $\alpha v\beta 3$ integrin and the $\alpha v\beta 5$ integrin, or which antagonize, inhibit or counteract the activity of the particular integrin(s) expressed on capillary endothelial cells. The term also refers to antagonists of the $\alpha 1\beta 1$, $\alpha 2\beta 1$, $\alpha 5\beta 1$, $\alpha 6\beta 1$ and $\alpha 6\beta 4$ integrins. The term also refers to 25 antagonists of any combination of $\alpha v\beta 3$ integrin, $\alpha v\beta 5$ integrin, $\alpha 1\beta 1$, $\alpha 2\beta 1$, $\alpha 5\beta 1$, $\alpha 6\beta 1$ and $\alpha 6\beta 4$ integrins. The instant compounds may also be useful with other agents that inhibit angiogenesis and thereby inhibit the growth and invasiveness of tumor cells, including, but not limited to angiostatin and endostatin.

30 Similarly, the instant compounds may be useful in combination with agents that are effective in the treatment and prevention of NF-1, restenosis, polycystic kidney disease, infections of hepatitis delta and related viruses and fungal infections.

If formulated as a fixed dose, such combination products employ the combinations of this invention within the dosage range described below and the other pharmaceutically active agent(s) within its approved dosage range. Combinations of the instant invention may 5 alternatively be used sequentially with known pharmaceutically acceptable agent(s) when a multiple combination formulation is inappropriate.

For oral use of a chemotherapeutic compound according to 10 this invention, the selected compound may be administered, for example, in the form of tablets or capsules, or as an aqueous solution or suspension. In the case of tablets for oral use, carriers which are commonly used include lactose and corn starch, and lubricating agents, such as magnesium stearate, are commonly added. For oral 15 administration in capsule form, useful diluents include lactose and dried corn starch. When aqueous suspensions are required for oral use, the active ingredient is combined with emulsifying and suspending agents. If desired, certain sweetening and/or flavoring agents may be added. For intramuscular, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous and 20 intravenous use, sterile solutions of the active ingredient are usually prepared, and the pH of the solutions should be suitably adjusted and buffered. For intravenous use, the total concentration of solutes should be controlled in order to render the preparation isotonic.

The compounds of the instant invention may also be co- 25 administered with other well-known therapeutic agents that are selected for their particular usefulness against the condition that is being treated. For example, the instant compounds may be useful in combination with known anti-cancer and cytotoxic agents. Similarly, the instant compounds may be useful in combination with agents that 30 are effective in the treatment and prevention of NF-1, restinosis, polycystic kidney disease, infections of hepatitis delta and related viruses and fungal infections.

If formulated as a fixed dose, such combination products employ the compounds of this invention within the dosage range 35 described below and the other pharmaceutically active agent(s) within

its approved dosage range. Compounds of the instant invention may alternatively be used sequentially with known pharmaceutically acceptable agent(s) when a combination formulation is inappropriate.

The present invention also encompasses a pharmaceutical composition useful in the treatment of cancer, comprising the administration of a therapeutically effective amount of the compounds of this invention, with or without pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents. Suitable compositions of this invention include aqueous solutions comprising compounds of this invention and pharmacologically acceptable carriers, e.g., saline, at a pH level, e.g., 7.4. The solutions may be introduced into a patient's intramuscular blood-stream by local bolus injection.

The compounds of the instant invention are also useful as a component in an assay to rapidly determine the presence and quantity of farnesyl-protein transferase (FPTase) in a composition. Thus the composition to be tested may be divided and the two portions contacted with mixtures which comprise a known substrate of FPTase (for example a tetrapeptide having a cysteine at the amine terminus) and farnesyl pyrophosphate and, in one of the mixtures, a compound of the instant invention. After the assay mixtures are incubated for an sufficient period of time, well known in the art, to allow the FPTase to farnesylate the substrate, the chemical content of the assay mixtures may be determined by well known immunological, radiochemical or chromatographic techniques. Because the compounds of the instant invention are selective inhibitors of FPTase, absence or quantitative reduction of the amount of substrate in the assay mixture without the compound of the instant invention relative to the presence of the unchanged substrate in the assay containing the instant compound is indicative of the presence of FPTase in the composition to be tested.

It would be readily apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art that such an assay as described above would be useful in identifying tissue samples which contain farnesyl-protein transferase and quantitating the enzyme. Thus, potent inhibitor compounds of the instant invention may be used in an active site titration assay to

determine the quantity of enzyme in the sample. A series of samples composed of aliquots of a tissue extract containing an unknown amount of farnesyl-protein transferase, an excess amount of a known substrate of FPTase (for example a tetrapeptide having a cysteine at the amine terminus) and farnesyl pyrophosphate are incubated for an appropriate period of time in the presence of varying concentrations of a compound of the instant invention. The concentration of a sufficiently potent inhibitor (i.e., one that has a Ki substantially smaller than the concentration of enzyme in the assay vessel) required to inhibit the enzymatic activity of the sample by 50% is approximately equal to half of the concentration of the enzyme in that particular sample.

EXAMPLES

15 Examples provided are intended to assist in a further understanding of the invention. Particular materials employed, species and conditions are intended to be further illustrative of the invention and not limitative of the reasonable scope thereof.

EXAMPLE 1

Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile

25 Step A: Preparation of phenyl 2-hydroxy-4-iodobenzoate
A solution of NaNO₂ (1.33 g, 19.3 mmol) in 10 mL water was added to a solution of phenyl-4-amino-2-hydroxybenzoate (4.02 g, 17.6 mmol) in 3N HCl (35 mL) and THF (10 mL) at 0°C. The resulting yellow solution was stirred for 30 minutes then KI (8.74 g, 52.7 mmol) in water (13 mL) was added. After 10 minutes, the dark brown/red slurry was poured into EtOAc, washed twice with water then with aqueous sodium bisulfite and brine. The dried (MgSO₄) solution was filtered and concentrated to give a dark oil. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 15:1) gave the title compound as a white solid which

contained approximately 15% of an unidentified impurity. This material was used as such in the next step.

Step B: Preparation of phenyl 4-iodo-2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy) benzoate

To a solution of a phenol, as described in Step A, in 10 mL of dimethyl formamide (DMF) was added 4-phenylbenzyl iodide (292 mg, 0.99 mmol) and Cs₂CO₃ (442 mg, 1.35 mmol) and the suspension was stirred for 16 hr. After this time, the reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc, extracted with water (3X), washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂; hexane:EtOAc 20:1) to provide an oil which crystallized from ether:hexane 1:10 to give the title compound as a white solid.

15 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) d 5.23 (2H, s), 7.17 (2H, m), 7.25 (1H, m), 7.3-7.6 (13H, m), 7.75 (1H, d).

Step C: Preparation of 4-ido-2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy) benzylalcohol

To a solution of an ester, as described in Step B, in 5 mL of THF was added lithium borohydride (28 mg, 1.27 mmol) and heated at reflux for 30 minutes. After this time, the reaction mixture was poured into EtOAc and extracted with 1N HCl, then water, and then brine. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford the title compound as a white solid :

20 15 ¹H NMR(CDCl₃) d 2.17 (1H, t), 4.70 (2H, d), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.07 (1H, d), 7.3-7.7 (11H, m).

Step D: Preparation of 4-cyano-2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy) benzylalcohol

A solution of an iodide, as described in Step C, and Zn(CN)₂ (49 mg, 0.42 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was degassed with argon for 15 minutes. Pd(Ph₃P)₄ (35 mg, 0.03 mmol) was added and the mixture heated to 80°C for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (2X). The organic layers were washed with 1N HCl, water and then brine. They were then dried (MgSO₄) and the

solvent removed. Chromatography of the residue (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1) afforded the title compound as a white solid.
 ^1H NMR(CDCl₃) d 2.18 (1H, t), 4.81 (2H, d), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.19 (1H, d), 7.3-7.65(11H, m)

5

Step E: Preparation of methanesulfonic acid 2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-cyanobenzyl ester

A solution of an alcohol, as described in Step D, in dichloromethane (4 mL) at room temperature, was treated sequentially with Et₃N (81 μ L, 0.59 mmol) and methanesulfonyl chloride (32 μ L, 0.41 mmol). After 1 hr, a further Et₃N (81 μ L, 0.59 mmol) and methanesulfonyl chloride (32 μ L, 0.41 mmol) was added and stirred for another hour. The solution was poured into water, extracted with EtOAc, washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give a solid.
15 Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1) gave the title compound as a solid. R_f (silica): 0.37 (hexane:EtOAc 2:1).
 ^1H NMR(CDCl₃) d 2.95 (3H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 5.35 (2H, s), 7.2-7.7 (12H, m).

20

Step F: Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

A solution of a mesylate, as described in Step E and imidazole (45 mg, 0.66 mmol) in DMF (1.5 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into a saturate NaHCO₃ solution, extracted with EtOAc, washed with water and then brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give a solid. Column chromatography (silica gel; 2% MeOH in CHCl₃) gave an oil which crystallized from ether to afford the title compound.
25 ^1H NMR(CDCl₃) d 5.16 (2H, s), 5.20 (2H, s), 6.89 (1H, t), 7.00 (1H, d), 7.09 (1H, s), 7.24 (2H, m), 7.35-7.5 (5H, m), 7.53 (1H, s), 7.6-7.68 (4H, m).
30 Analysis calculated for C₂₄H₁₉N₃O:

C, 78.88; H, 5.24; N, 11.50;

Found: C, 78.67; H, 5.54; N, 11.31.

EXAMPLE 2Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile hydrochloride

5

Step A: Preparation of phenyl 4-cyano-2-hydroxybenzoate

A solution of phenyl 2-hydroxy-4-iodobenzoate, as described in Example 1, Step A, (2.38 g, 7.0 mmol) and Zn(CN)₂ (575 mg, 4.9 mmol) in DMF was degassed with argon for 25 minutes. Pd(Ph₃P)₄ (404 mg, 0.35 mmol) was added and the mixture heated to 80°C for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc (2X), washed with water then brine, dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent removed. Chromatography of the residue (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 9:1) afforded the title compound as a white solid.

15 ¹H NMR(CDCl₃) δ 7.18-7.28 (3H, m), 7.35 (2H, m), 7.48 (2H, m), 8.19 (1H, d), 10.67 (1H, s).

Step B: Preparation of phenyl 4-cyano-2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)benzoate

20 To a solution of a phenol, as described in Step A, in 5 mL of dimethyl formamide (DMF) was added biphenyl-4-ylethyl iodide (170 mg, 0.55 mmol) and Cs₂CO₃ (246 mg, 0.75 mmol). The suspension was stirred for 16 hr. After this time, the reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc, extracted with water (3X), washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂; hexane:EtOAc 9:1 then 4:1) to provide the title compound.

25 Rf (silica): 0.22 (hexane:EtOAc 9:1).

Step C: Preparation of 4-cyano-2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy) benzyl alcohol

30 To a solution of an ester, as described in Step B, in 3 mL of THF was added lithium borohydride (9.6 mg, 0.44 mmol) and heated at reflux for 1 hr. After this time, the reaction mixture was poured into EtOAc and extracted with 1N HCl, then water, then brine. The organic

layer was separated, dried ($MgSO_4$) and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford the title compound as an oil. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO_2 ; hexane:EtOAc 2:1) to provide the title compound.
 1H NMR($CDCl_3$) d 2.16 (1H, t), 3.17 (2H, t), 4.25 (2H, t), 4.65 (1H, d), 7.06
5 (1H, d), 7.24 (1H, dd), 7.3-7.45 (6H, m), 7.55-7.6 (4H, m).

Step D: Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-bromomethyl-benzonitrile

A mixture of an alcohol, as described in Step C, carbon 10 tetrabromide (68 mg, 0.205 mmol) and PPh_3 (54 mg, 0.205 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was stirred for 16 hr. More carbon tetrabromide (68 mg, 0.205 mmol) and PPh_3 (54 mg, 0.205 mmol) were added and stirring continued for 24 hr. The solution was diluted with ether, filtered and the solvent concentrated. Chromatography of the residue (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 15 9:1) afforded the title compound.

Rf (silica): 0.78 (hexane:EtOAc 2:1).

Step E: Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

A solution of a bromide, as described in Step D, and 20 imidazole (26 mg, 0.38 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into saturate $NaHCO_3$ solution, extracted with EtOAc, washed with water then brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and evaporated to give a solid. Column chromatography (silica 25 gel; hexane:EtOAc 1:1 then 2% MeOH in $CHCl_3$) gave an oil which was treated with 0.5 mL 1N HCl in ether to afford (after removal of the ether) the title compound as a solid.

1H NMR(CD_3OD) d 3.18 (2H, t), 4.44 (2H, t), 5.38 (2H, s), 7.2-7.5 (10H, m),
7.5-7.7 (4H, m), 8.62 (1H, s).

EXAMPLE 3Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-3-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile hydrochloride

5 Following the procedure described in Example 2, Steps A to F, but using biphenyl-3-ylmethyl bromide, as described in Step B, as starting material, the title compound was obtained as a solid.
 ^1H NMR(CD₃OD) δ 5.27 (2H, s), 5.52 (2H, s), 7.3-7.7 (14H, m), 8.85 (1H, s).

10 EXAMPLE 4

Preparation of 2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile

15 Step A: Preparation of methyl 4-amino-3-hydroxybenzoate
HCl (g) was bubbled through a solution of 4-amino-3-hydroxybenzoic acid (7 g, 54.8 mmol) in MeOH (450 mL) until saturated then the mixture was heated at 70°C for 16 hr. The mixture was concentrated in vacuo, the residue taken up in EtOAc, washed with 20 saturated NaHCO₃ then brine and dried (MgSO₄). Removal of the solvent yielded the title compound as a brown solid.
 ^1H NMR(CD₃OD) δ 3.80 (3H, s), 6.66 (1H, d), 7.32 (1H, dd), 7.37 (1H, dd).

25 Step B: Preparation of methyl 3-hydroxy-4-iodobenzoate
A solution of NaNO₂ (15.89 g, 0.092 mol) in water (30 mL) was added to a solution of methyl 4-amino-3-hydroxybenzoate (14.00 g, 0.084 mol) in 3N HCl (120 mL) and THF (20 mL) at 0°C. The resulting dark red solution was stirred for 30 minutes then KI (41.68 g, 2.51 mol) in water (30 mL) was added. After 10 minutes, the dark brown/red 30 slurry was poured into EtOAc, washed twice with water then with aqueous sodium bisulfite and brine. The dried (MgSO₄) solution was filtered and concentrated to give a dark oil. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 15:1) gave the title compound.

Step C: Preparation of methyl 4-cyano-3-hydroxybenzoate

A solution of methyl 3-hydroxy-4-iodobenzoate (2.38 g, 7.0 mmol) (as described in Step B) and Zn(CN)₂ (0.575 g, 4.9 mmol) in DMF was degassed with argon for 25 minutes. Pd(Ph₃P)₄ (0.404 g, 0.35

5 mmol) was added and the mixture heated to 80°C for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc (2X), washed with water then brine, dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent removed.

Chromatography of the residue (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 9:1) afforded the title compound as a white solid.

10 ¹H NMR(CDCl₃) δ 3.95 (3H, s), 6.54 (1H, br s), 7.60 (1H, d), 7.65 (1H, d), 7.570 (1H, s).

Step D: Preparation of 2-Hydroxy-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile

Methyl 4-cyano-3-hydroxybenzoate (as described in Example 15 4, Step C) (0.50 g, 2.82 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (30 mL), treated with LiBH₄ (2.0M solution in THF) (5.64 mL, 11.28 mmol) and heated at reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated, then partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and 1N HCl (50 mL), the aqueous layer extracted with additional EtOAc (2 x 50 mL), the organic layers combined, washed with brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound.

20 ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 7.45 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J = 1 Hz), 6.89 (1H, dd, J = 1, 8, Hz), 4.58 (2H, s).

25 **Step E:** Preparation of 4-Bromomethyl-2-hydroxy-benzonitrile

2-Hydroxy-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile (0.20 g, 1.34 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (5 mL) - CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL) and treated with triphenylphosphine (0.53 g, 2.01 mmol) and carbon tetrabromide (0.67 g, 2.01 mmol) at ambient temperature with stirring. After 2 h the reaction 30 mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) - H₂O (100 mL), the organic layer separated, dried (MgSO₄), and filtered to give the title compound after silica gel chromatography (15% EtOAc/ hexane to 25%EtOAc/ hexane).

35 ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 7.45 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 6.94 (1H, s), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8,

Hz), 4.40 (2H, s).

Step F: Preparation of 2-Hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-Bromomethyl-2-hydroxy-benzonitrile (0.22 g, 1.05 mmol) and imidazole (0.36 g, 5.23 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (10 mL) with stirring at ambient temperature. After stirring for 18 h the reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by silica gel chromatography eluting with 2% CH₃OH/ CH₂Cl₂ to 5% CH₃OH/ CH₂Cl₂ to give the title compound.

10 ¹H NMR (DMSO) δ 11.11 (1H, s), 7.74 (1H, s), 7.58 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.17 (1H, s), 6.95 (1H, s), 6.74 (1H, d, J = 8, Hz), 6.69 (1H, s), 5.23 (2H, s).

Step G: Preparation of 2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 Following the procedure described in Example 2, Step E but using 2-hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (as described in Step F) and biphenyl-4-ylmethyl iodide as starting materials, the title compound was obtained as a solid.

10 ¹H NMR(CD₃OD) d 4.89 (2H, s), 5.28 (2H, s), 6.91 (1H, d), 7.06 (3H, m), 7.3-7.55 (5H, m), 7.6-7.66 (5H, m), 7.77 (1H, s).

20 Analysis calculated for C₂₄H₁₉N₃O:
Found: C, 78.88; H, 5.24; N, 11.50;
 C, 78.59; H, 5.31; N, 11.10.

25

EXAMPLE 5

Preparation of 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Following the procedure described in Example 4, Step A to D but using biphenyl-4-ylethyl iodide as the starting material in Step B, and treatment of the final product with 1N HCl in ether, the title compound was obtained as a solid.

30 ¹H NMR(CD₃OD) d 3.13 (2H, t), 4.28 (2H, t), 4.90 (2H, s), 6.83 (1H, dd), 6.95 (1H, s), 7.00 (1H, t), 7.11 (1H, t), 7.30 (1H, m), 7.35-7.45 (4H, m), 7.5-7.6 (5H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

EXAMPLE 6

Preparation of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)ethyl]piperazine

Step A: Preparation of L-N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl homoserine lactone

To a solution of L-homoserine lactone hydrochloride (10 g, 72.7 mmol) and (Boc)₂O (19.0 g, 87.2 mmol) in dichloromethane (200 mL) at 0°C was added Et₃N (12.2 mL, 87.2 mmol) dropwise. The solution was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into 10% citric acid solution, extracted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO₃ solution, then brine, dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated *in vacuo*. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 1:1 then pure EtOAc) afforded the title compound as a white solid.
Rf (silica): 0.58 (hexane:EtOAc 1:1).

Step B: Preparation of L-N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl homoserine lactol

To a solution of a lactone, as described in Step A, in THF (355 mL) at -78°C was added DIBAL-H (1.0M in THF; 146 mL, 146 mmol) dropwise. The solution was stirred at -78°C for 1 hr then EtOAc and sodium potassium tartrate solution were added and the resulting mixture stirred vigorously for 30 minutes. After extracting with EtOAc (4X) the combined organic layers were washed with brine and dried over MgSO₄. Removal of the solvent yielded an oil which solidified on standing. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1 then 1:1) afforded* the title compound as a white solid.

Step C: Preparation of 3(S)-(N'-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino)-4-(N-3-chlorophenylamino)-butanol

To a solution of a lactol, as described in Step B, and 3-chloroaniline (6.25 mL, 59.1 mmol) in dichloroethane (200 mL) at room temperature was added acetic acid (3.07 mL, 53.7 mmol) followed by Na(OAc)₃BH (17.1 g, 80.5 mmol) and the mixture stirred for 2 hr. Saturated NaHCO₃ solution was added and the mixture extracted with

dichloromethane (3X), washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated *in vacuo*. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1 then 1:1 then pure EtOAc) afforded the title compound as a white solid.

- 5 1H NMR($CDCl_3$) δ 1.45 (9H, s), 1.5 (1H, m), 1.90 (1H, m), 2.96 (1H, br s),
3.11 (1H, m), 3.24 (1H, m), 3.73 (2H, m), 4.05 (2H, m), 4.75 (1H, d), 6.48
(1H, dd), 6.58 (1H, t), 6.67 (1H, dd), 7.07 (1H, t).

Step D: Preparation of 3(S)-(N'-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino)-4-(N-3-chlorophenyl-N-chloroacetyl)amino-butanol

- To a solution of an amine, as described in Step C, in EtOAc (120 mL) and saturated $NaHCO_3$ (120 mL) at 0°C was added chloroacetyl chloride (3.08 mL, 38.8 mL) dropwise. After 2 hr, the mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3X), washed with brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the title product as a clear oil which was used as such.

Step E: Preparation of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-(2-hydroxyethyl)-5-oxo-piperazine

- 20 To a solution of a chloroacetamide, as described in Step D, in DMF (100 mL) at 0°C was added Cs_2CO_3 (27.75 g, 85.2 mmol) and the reaction was stirred for 6 hr. The solution was poured into EtOAc and saturated NH_4Cl . Extracted with EtOAc (3X), washed with brine, dried and evaporated to give a yellow oil. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1 then 1:1 then pure EtOAc) afforded the title compound as a clear oil.

Step F: Preparation of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-methoxycarbonylphenoxy)ethyl]-5-oxo-piperazine

- 30 To a solution of 250 mg of methyl 4-cyano-3-hydroxybenzoate (1.42 mmol), as described in Example 4, Step C, and PPh_3 (465 mg, 1.77 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added dropwise a solution of the alcohol from Step E above (503 mg, 1.42 mmol) and DEAD (0.28 mL, 1.77 mmol) in

THF (5 mL). After stirring for 16 hr, the solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue taken up in EtOAc. This was then washed with 10% citric acid solution, saturated NaHCO₃ solution, brine and dried over MgSO₄. Filtration and removal of the solvent afforded an oil.

- 5 Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 4:1) afforded the title compound as a clear oil.

Step G: Preparation of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-hydroxymethylphenoxy)ethyl]-10 piperazine

Following the procedure described in Example 1, Step C but using an ester, as described in Step F above, as the starting material, the title compound was obtained.

FAB mass spectrum m/z = 472.21 (M+H requires 471.19)

15

Step H: Preparation of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chloro-phenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)ethyl]-5-oxo-piperazine

Following the procedure described in Example 2, Steps D 20 and E but using an alcohol, as described in Step G above, as the starting material, the title compound was obtained as a white solid.

FAB mass spectrum m/z = 522.19 (M+H requires 522.22).

25 Analysis calculated for C₂₈H₃₂N₅O₃Cl•0.15CH₂Cl₂:

C, 63.22; H, 6.09; N, 13.10;

Found: ¹³C, 63.17; H, 5.88; N, 12.93.

EXAMPLE 7

30

Preparation of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Step A: Preparation of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-methyl-benzonitrile

To a solution of 2-fluoro-4-methylbenzonitrile (356mg, 3.96mmol) and 3-chlorophenol(439 μ L, 4.16mmol) in 10mL of DMSO was added Cs₂CO₃ (2.58g, 7.92 mmol). The solution was heated at 80°C for 4h. The solution was diluted with EtOAc and was washed with Sat. NaHCO₃ solution, water, and brine. The organics were dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the title compound without further purification.

5 Step B: Preparation of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-bromo-ylmethyl-
10 benzonitrile

To a solution of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-methyl-benzonitrile (640 mg, 2.63 mmol), as described in Step A, NBS (470 mg, 2.63 mmol), and AIBN (13mg, 0.07mmol) in 24mL of CCl₄ was refluxed under Ar for 4h. The solution was filtered through a celite pad and the filtrate was 15 concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (0-6% EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound.

15 Step C: Preparation of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-
20 benzonitrile hydrochloride

To a solution of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-bromo-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (111mg, 0.34mmol), as described in Step B, in 10mL of DMF was added imidazole (117mg, 1.72mmol). The reaction was stirred for 18h at ambient temperature. The solvent was removed *in vacuo*, diluted with EtOAc and was washed with saturated NaHCO₃ solution, water, 25 and brine. The organics were dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (1% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) and treated with 1N HCl in ether to give the title compound as a HCl salt.

30 ¹HNMR (CDCl₃, 400MHz) d 9.04(1H, s), 7.84(1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.61(2H, d, J=11Hz), 7.43(1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.27(2H, t, J=7Hz), 7.16 (1H, s), 7.05-7.07(2H, m), 5.50(2H, s). FAB MS 310 (M+1)

Anal. calculated for C₁₇H₁₂N₃O₁Cl₁ 1.0 HCl: 0.85 H₂O

 C, 56.47; H, 4.10; N, 11.62;
Found C, 56.85; H, 4.08; N, 11.23.

EXAMPLE 8

Preparation of 2-(4-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile hydrochloride

5

Step A: Preparation of 2-hydroxy-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile

Methyl 4-cyano-3-hydroxybenzoate, as described in Example 4, Step C, (0.50 g, 2.82 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (30 mL), treated with LiBH₄ (2.0M solution in THF) (5.64 mL, 11.28 mmol) and heated at reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated, then partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and 1N HCl (50 mL). Next, the aqueous layer was extracted with additional EtOAc (2 x 50 mL), the organic layers were combined, washed with brine, and dried (MgSO₄). The title compounds was obtained by filtering and concentrating to dryness.

1H NMR (CD₃OD) d 7.45 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J = 1 Hz), 6.89 (1H, dd, J = 1, 8, Hz), 4.58 (2H, s).

Step B: Preparation of 4-bromomethyl-2-hydroxy-benzonitrile

20 2-hydroxy-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile (0.20 g, 1.34 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (5 mL) and CH₂Cl₂(5 mL) and then treated with triphenylphosphine (0.53 g, 2.01 mmol) and carbon tetrabromide (0.67 g, 2.01 mmol) at ambient temperature with stirring. After 2 h, the reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and H₂O (100 mL), the organic layer were separated, dried (MgSO₄), and filtered to give the title compound after silica gel chromatography (15% EtOAc/ hexane to 25%EtOAc/ hexane).

1H NMR (CD₃OD) d 7.45 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 6.94 (1H, s), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8, Hz), 4.40 (2H, s).

30

Step C: Preparation of 2-hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile

4-bromomethyl-2-hydroxy-benzonitrile (0.22 g, 1.05 mmol) and imidazole (0.36 g, 5.23 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (10 mL) with stirring at ambient temperature. After stirring for 18 h, the reaction

mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by silica gel chromatography eluting with 2% CH₃OH/ CH₂Cl₂ to 5% CH₃OH/ CH₂Cl₂ to give the title compound.

1H NMR (DMSO) δ 11.11 (1H, s), 7.74 (1H, s), 7.58 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.17
5 (1H, s), 6.95 (1H, s), 6.74 (1H, d, J = 8, Hz), 6.69 (1H, s), 5.23 (2H, s).

Step D: Preparation of 2-(4-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

4-chlorophenethyl alcohol (0.11 g, 0.67 mmol) and
10 triethylamine (0.37 mL, 2.68 mmol) were dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL) at 0°C. Then it was treated with methanesulfonyl chloride (0.207 mL, 2.68 mmol), with stirring and warming to ambient temperature, until tlc indicated loss of starting material. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, then dissolved in DMF (1 mL) and added to a
15 mixture of 2-hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (0.10 g, 0.50 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.33 g, 1.0 mmol) in DMF (2 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at 30°C for 18 h, then partitioned between EtOAc and H₂O, the aqueous layer washed with EtOAc, the organic layers combined, washed with brine, and dried (Na₂SO₄). Filtration and
20 concentration to dryness gave the title compound after silica gel chromatography (0.1 to 0.2% CH₃OH/NH₄OH in CH₂Cl₂) and conversion to the hydrochloride salt.

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 338

Analysis calculated for C₁₉H₁₆N₃OCl • 1.3 HCl • 0.75 H₂O:

25 C, 57.23; H, 4.75; N, 10.54;
Found: C, 57.49; H, 4.74; N, 10.14.

Using the procedure described above, but substituting the appropriate heterocycle for imidazole in Step C and the appropriate mesylate or
30 halide in Step D, the following compounds were prepared:

2-(3-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 338
35 Analysis calculated for C₁₉H₁₆N₃OCl • 1.2 HCl • 0.35 H₂O:

C, 58.83; H, 4.65; N, 10.83;

Found: C, 58.90; H, 4.67; N, 10.50.

- 5 2-(2-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride
-

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 338

2-(phenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304

- 10 Analysis calculated for C₁₉H₁₇N₃O • 1.0 HCl • 0.85 H₂O:

C, 64.25; H, 5.59; N, 11.83;

Found: C, 64.55; H, 5.77; N, 11.44.

2-(3-chlorobenzylxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

- 15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

Analysis calculated for C₁₈H₁₄ClN₃O • 1.2 HCl • 0.40 H₂O:

C, 57.69; H, 4.30; N, 11.21;

Found: C, 57.66; H, 4.31; N, 11.02.

- 20 2-(4-chlorobenzylxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

2-(2,4-dichlorobenzylxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 358

- 25 Analysis calculated for C₁₈H₁₃Cl₂N₃O • 0.10 H₂O:

C, 60.04; H, 3.70; N, 11.67;

Found: C, 60.02; H, 3.84; N, 11.78.

2-(benzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 30 Analysis calculated for C₁₈H₁₅N₃O • 0.45 H₂O:

C, 72.68; H, 5.39; N, 14.13;

Found: C, 73.03; H, 5.13; N, 13.75.

2-(biphenyl-2-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 35 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 366

Analysis calculated for $C_{24}H_{19}N_3O \bullet 1.1 HCl \bullet 0.85 H_2O$:

C, 68.49; H, 5.22; N, 9.99;

Found: C, 68.46; H, 5.24; N, 9.64.

5 2-(phenyl-4-butoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 332

Analysis calculated for $C_{21}H_{21}N_3O \bullet 1.4 HCl$:

C, 65.94; H, 5.90; N, 10.99;

Found: C, 65.94; H, 5.78; N, 10.78.

10

2-(phenyl-3-propoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318

Analysis calculated for $C_{20}H_{19}N_3O \bullet 1.1 HCl$:

C, 67.19; H, 5.67; N, 11.75;

15 Found: C, 67.20; H, 5.43; N, 11.70.

2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

HR mass spectrum theoretical 381.1710; measured 381.1707.

20

2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

HR mass spectrum theoretical 394.1910; measured 394.1914.

25

2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

HR mass spectrum theoretical 430.1920; measured 430.1914.

30

EXAMPLE 9

Preparation of 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-(2-naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Step A: Preparation of 4-bromo-3-fluorobenzoic acid

4-Bromo-3-fluorotoluene(40.0 g, 0.212 mol) was heated at 90° C in H₂O (200 mL) and pyridine (200 mL) with mechanical stirring under Ar. Potassium permanganate (KMnO₄) (67 g, 0.424 mol) was added portionwise over 3 h. After 4 h, an HPLC of a filtered sample indicated 50 % conversion to the acid. An additional 30 g of KMnO₄ was added and heating continued overnight. HPLC indicated 81% conversion. Further KMnO₄ was added portionwise with reaction monitoring by HPLC until > 95% conversion was obtained. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite, the filter pad washed with H₂O, aq NaOH and EtOH. The filtrate was concentrated to a small volume, then partitioned between 3N NaOH solution and diethyl ether. The aqueous basic layer was separated, cooled in an ice- H₂O bath and acidified slowly with 6N HCl solution to precipitate the white solid product. This was collected by suction filtration and dried at 40 °C. in a vacuum oven overnight to give the title compound. mp 190 -192°C.
¹H NMR (CDCl₃) d 7.83 (dd, 1H, J = 2, 9 Hz), 7.78 (dd, 1H, J = 2, 8 Hz), 7.67 - 7.71 (m, 1H).

Step B: Preparation of 4-bromo-3-fluorobenzyl alcohol

4-Bromo-3-fluorobenzoic acid (40.8 g, 0.187 mol) was dissolved in THF (250 ml) with magnetic stirring under Ar in an ice-H₂O bath. The cloudy solution was treated dropwise with borane-THF complex (1 M) (374 mL, 0.374 mol) over a 1 h period maintaining the internal temperature at < 10°C. The reaction mixture was left to warm to ambient temperature overnight, then cooled in an ice H₂O bath and treated dropwise with H₂O (150 mL). The THF was removed on a rotary evaporator, and the residue partitioned between EtOAc and H₂O. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL), the organic layers combined, washed with brine, and dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, and concentrated to give the title compound as an oil which solidified on standing.
¹H NMR (CDCl₃) d 7.52 (t, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.16 (d, 1H, J = 9 Hz), 7.02 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 4.67 (s, 2H), 1.47 (br s, 1H).

Step C: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile

4-Bromo-3-fluorobenzyl alcohol (20 g, 0.097 mol) was dissolved in DMF (100 mL) and then placed under high vacuum for 15 min. The solution was then purged with Ar for 15 min. While purging continued, zinc cyanide (8 g, 0.068 mol) and the catalyst, Pd[(PPh₃)₄] (5.63 g, 0.0049 mol) were added. The reaction mixture was heated at 95°C under Ar for 18 h, then cooled to ambient temperature and added to H₂O. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc, then washed with 1M HCl, H₂O, brine, and dried (Na₂SO₄). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound as a white solid after chromatography (silica gel, hexane: EtOAc, 6.5:3.5).
¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.61 (t, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.23 - 7.29 (m, 2H), 4.80 (d, 2H, J = 6 Hz), 1.93 (t, 1H, J = 6Hz).

15 Step D: Preparation of 4-bromomethyl-2-fluoro-benzonitrile

N-Bromosuccinimide (6.6 g, 0.037 mol) was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (150 mL), cooled to 0°C and treated with dimethylsulfide (3.27 mL, 0.0446 mol). The solution was cooled to -20°C and then treated dropwise with a solution of 2-fluoro-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile (3.74 g, 0.0248 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (30 mL). After the addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2 h then left to warm to ambient temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was added to ice/ H₂O, extracted with EtOAc, the organic layer separated, washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound which was purified chromatography (silica gel, 5-10% EtOAc/ hexane).
¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.61 (dd, 1H, J = 8, 8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.30 (m, 2H), 4.45 (s, 2H).

30 Step E: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-Bromomethyl-2-fluoro-benzonitrile (3.44g, 16.0 mmol) and imidazole (5.47 g, 80.3 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (40 mL) and stirred at ambient temperature for 2 h. The DMF was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc (300 mL) and aqueous saturated NaHCO₃ solution. The organic layer was separated, washed with

NaHCO₃ solution, H₂O, brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, 1-2% CH₃OH/CH₂Cl₂).

5 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.62 (dd, 1H, J = 8.5, 9.5 Hz), 7.57 (s, 1H), 7.16 (s, 1H), 7.00 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 6.94 (d, 1H, J = 9.5 Hz), 6.91 (s, 1H), 5.21 (s, 2H).

Step F: Preparation of 2-(2-naphthoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

10 2-Fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (0.167 g, 0.830 mmol), 2-naphthol (0.143 g, 0.996 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.54 g, 1.66 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (15 mL) and heated at 55°C under Ar for 18 h. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and 1N NaOH solution. The organic layer was separated, washed with 1N NaOH solution, H₂O, brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, 1% CH₃OH/CH₂Cl₂).

15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 326

Analysis calculated for C₂₁H₁₅N₃O • 1.0 HCl • 0.75 H₂O:

C, 67.19; H, 4.70; N, 11.20;

20 Found: C, 67.23; H, 4.89; N, 11.14.

Using the procedure described above, but substituting the appropriate heterocycle for imidazole in Step E and the appropriate phenol or thiol in Step F, the following compounds were prepared:

25

2-(3-cyanophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 301

2-(3-bromophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 353

2-(biphen-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 352

2-(biphen-4-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 352

2-(3-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

5 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318

2-(2-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318

10 2-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 344

2-(3-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 290

15

2-(2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 290

2-(4-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

20 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 290

2-(3-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 306

25

2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 306

2-(4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 306

30

2-(3,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304

2-(3,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

35 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304

2-(3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336

5 2-(1-naphthoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 326

2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 343

10

2-(3-fluorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 294

2-(3-t-butylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 332

2-[3-(N,N-diethylamino)phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 347

20 2-(3-N-propylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318

2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336

25

2-(2,3-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304

2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336

2-(2,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336

35 2-(3,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 343

2-(2,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304

5

2-(4-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

2-(5-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

10 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

2-(2-chloro-4,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 338

15 2-(5-hydroxymethyl-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

20 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 367

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-methylphenylamino)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 81

25 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 368

2-(2-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 380

30

1-(5-chloro-2-methoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 474

1-(2,5-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyll-urea

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 470

5 2-(3-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 382

2-(4-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 382

10

2-(2-benzyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 366

2-(3-ethynyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 300

2-(4-acetyl-3-methyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 332

20 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1H-indazol-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 315

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile

25 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 330

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(8-oxo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 344

30

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1H-indol-7-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 315

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-oxo-indan-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

35 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 330

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indol-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 315

5 2-[3-(2-hydroxy-ethoxy)-phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(4-imidazol-1-yl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 342

10

4'-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-biphenyl-4-carbonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 377

N-[3-(2-Cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-acetamide

15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 333

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(9-oxo-9*H*-fluoren-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 378

20 2-(5-cyano-2-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-phenyl-benzamide

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 395

2-(5-chloro-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 311

25

N-[3-(2-Cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-
benzenesulfonamide

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 431

30 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(indan-5-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 316

2-(9*H*-carbazol-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 365

35

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 330

- 5 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-methoxy-4-propenyl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 346

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(3-oxo-butyl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 346

- 10 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 310

- 15 2-(4-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 310

- 20 2-(3,5-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 344

- 25 2-(pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile dihydrochloride
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 277

- 30 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 310

- 35 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-(4-phenyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile hydrochloride
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 386

- 40 2-(biphen-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride
Analysis calculated for C₂₃H₁₇N₃O • 1.0 HCl • 0.75 H₂O:
C, 68.82; H, 4.90; N, 10.47;

Found: C, 68.80; H, 4.91; N, 10.30.

45

2-(phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Analysis calculated for C₁₇H₁₃N₃O • 1.0 HCl • 0.35 H₂O:

C, 64.19; H, 4.66; N, 13.21;

Found: C, 64.33; H, 4.78; N, 12.84.

5

EXAMPLE 10Preparation of 2-(2-chloro-4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

10

Step A: Preparation of 2-(2-chloro-4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

2-Fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile, as described in Example 9, Step E, (0.118 g, 0.586 mmol), 2-chloro-4-methoxyphenol (0.112 g, 0.703 mmol) and 18-crown-6 (0.11 g, 10% by weight of phenol) were dissolved in CH₃CN (5 mL) and heated at reflux under Ar for 18 h. The reaction mixture was filtered, dissolved in CH₃OH and purified by RP HPLC on a Waters Prep Pak column eluting with a 0.1%TFA/H₂O: 0.1%TFA/CH₃CN gradient (95:5 to 5:95) to give the title compound after conversion to the hydrochloride salt.

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 340

Analysis calculated for C₁₈H₁₄ClN₃O₂ • 1.0 HCl • 0.15 CH₂Cl₂:

C, 56.04; H, 3.96; N, 10.80;

25 Found: C, 56.25; H, 3.90; N, 10.42.

Using the procedure described above, but substituting the appropriate heterocycle for imidazole (Example 9, Step E) and the appropriate phenol or thiol in Step A, the following compounds were prepared:

30

2-(2-chlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 326

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-ylsulfanyl)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 342

2-(2,4-dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

5 hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 360

Oxidation of this compound provided the sulfoxide:

10 2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfinyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl--benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 376

and the sulfone:

15 2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfonyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl--benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 392

2-(2-methyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 291

20

2-(2,4-dimethyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 305

2-(4-chloro-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25 hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 340

2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(5-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

30

2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(4-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

2-(3-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-pyridin-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 471

- 5 **2-(2-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride**
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318

2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

- 10 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 358

N-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-benzamide

Analysis calculated for C₂₄H₁₈N₄O₂ • 0.1 EtOAc:

C, 72.67; H, 4.70; N, 13.90;

- 15 Found: C, 72.70; H, 4.70; N, 13.50.

2-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-N-phenyl-acetamide

Analysis calculated for C₂₅H₂₀N₄O₂ • 0.95 H₂O:

- 20 C, 70.55; H, 5.19; N, 13.17;

Found: C, 70.52; H, 5.03; N, 12.92.

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 327

25

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 343

N-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-2-phenyl-acetamide

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 409

5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-cyclohexyl-nicotinamide

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 402

35

N-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-nicotinamide

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 430

- 5 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-ethyl-N-phenyl-benzamide
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 423

3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-cyclopropylmethyl-N-phenyl-benzamide

- 10 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 449

2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-(2,4-dimethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 364

- 15 4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 340

EXAMPLE 11

20

Preparation of 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-ethyl-N-phenyl-benzamide trifluoroacetate

- To a solution of 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-phenyl-benzamide (0.075 g, 0.19 mmol) in DMF (5.0ml) was added
25 NaH (0.016 g, 60% disp., 0.38 mmol). The solution was stirred for 10 min. and iodoethane (0.060 mL, 0.76 mmol) was added and the stirring continued for 18 hr. The DMF was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO₃. The EtOAc layer was washed with H₂O, brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and
30 concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound after purification on preparative HPLC. FAB mass spectrum m/e 423 (M+1).
Analysis calculated for C₂₆H₂₂N₄O₂ • 1.35 TFA • 0.25 H₂O :

C, 59.33; H, 4.14; N, 9.65;

Found: C, 59.33; H, 4.11; N, 9.73.

35

Using the procedure described above the following compound was prepared:

3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-cyclopropylmethyl-N-phenyl-benzamide

- 5 FAB mass spectrum m/e 449 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 12

Preparation of 4-(1-imidazol-1-yl-1-methyl-ethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Step A: Preparation of 4-(1-imidazol-1-yl-1-methyl-ethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

- 15 4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride (126 mg, .348 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (2 mL) and cooled to -78°C under argon. Lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (1.31 mL, 1.31 mmol) was added dropwise over 5 min and stirred for 15 min. Methyl iodide (.086 mL, 1.39 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred at -78°C for 4 h. The reaction was quenched with sat. NaHCO₃ solution (1 mL), warmed to RT, diluted with sat. NaHCO₃ solution and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3X). The combined organic layers were dried (Na₂SO₄), concentrated, and purified using SiO₂ chromatography (0.5 - 1.0 % MeOH/CH₂Cl₂). The oil was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ and treated with 1N HCl ethereal solution to give the title compound.

25

EXAMPLE 13

Preparation of 1-[4-iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzyl]-1*H*-imidazole

30 Step A: Preparation of 4-ido-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzoic acid methyl ester

- A mixture of 3-hydroxy-4-ido-benzoic acid acid methyl ester (0.505 g, 1.82 mmol), cupric acetate (0.330 g, 1.82 mmol), 2-naphthylboronic acid (0.625 g, 3.63 mmol) and powdered 4A molecular sieves (0.3 g) in CH₂Cl₂ (21 mL) was treated with triethylamine (1.27 mL, 9.08 mmol) and stirred at ambient temperature for 18 hr. The reaction

mixture was filtered through celite, concentrated to dryness and chromatographed (SiO_2 , 5 - 40% EtOAc: hexane) to give the title compound. FAB mass spectrum ($M+1$) 405.

- 5 Step B: Preparation of [4-*ido*-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-phenyl]-methanol
-
- 10 4-Iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzoic acid methyl ester (0.10 g, 0.25 mmol) dissolved in THF (2 mL) was treated with LiBH_4 (2 M solution in THF) (0.247 mL, 0.495 mmol) and heated at reflux for 1.5 hr.
- 15 The reaction mixture was cooled, added to H_2O (50 mL)- concd HCl (4.3 mL), and extracted with EtOAc (3x30 mL). The organics were combined, washed with H_2O , aq saturated NaHCO_3 solution, brine, and dried (Na_2SO_4). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound which was used without purification.
- 15 Step C: Preparation of [4-*ido*-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-phenyl]-methyl bromide
-
- 20 To a solution of [4-*ido*-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-phenyl]-methanol (0.085 g, 0.226 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (2 mL) at -15°C was added a cold (0°C) solution of N-bromosuccinimide (0.120 g, 0.68 mmol) in dimethyl sulfide (0.060 mL, 0.814 mmol) with stirring. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature overnight, concentrated to dryness, and chromatographed (SiO_2 , 10%EtOAc:hexane) to give the title compound which was used without purification.
- 25 Step D: Preparation of 1-[4-*Iodo*-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzyl]-1*H*-imidazole
-
- 30 [4-*Iodo*-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-phenyl]-methyl bromide (0.226 mmol) and imidazole (0.10 g) were dissolved in DMF (2 mL) and stirred at ambient temperature for 18 hr. The reaction mixture was purified by RP LC on a Vydac column eluting with a gradient of 0.1%TFA/ H_2O : 0.1%TFA/ CH_3CN (95/5:5/95) to give the title compound. FAB mass spectrum ($M+1$) 427.
- 35 Analysis calculated for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{15}\text{IN}_2\text{O} \bullet 0.35\text{Et}_2\text{O} \bullet 0.25\text{HCl}$:

C, 55.71; H, 4.10; N, 6.07;
Found: C, 55.70; H, 4.07; N, 5.70.

EXAMPLE 14

5

Preparation of acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester hydrochloride

- 10 Step A: Preparation of 1-triphenylmethyl-4-(hydroxymethyl)-imidazole
- To a solution of 4-(hydroxymethyl)imidazole hydrochloride (35.0 g, 260 mmol) in 250 mL of dry DMF at room temperature was added triethylamine (90.6 mL, 650 mmol). A white solid precipitated from the solution. Chlorotriphenylmethane (76.1 g, 273 mmol) in 500 mL of DMF 15 was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred for 20 hours, poured over ice, filtered, and washed with ice water. The resulting product was slurried with cold dioxane, filtered, and dried *in vacuo* to provide the title product as a white.
- 20 Step B: Preparation of 1-triphenylmethyl-4-(acetoxymethyl)-imidazole
- 1-Triphenylmethyl-4-(hydroxymethyl)-imidazole (260 mmol) was suspended in 500 mL of pyridine. Acetic anhydride (74 mL, 780 mmol) was added dropwise, and the reaction was stirred for 48 hours 25 during which it became homogeneous. The solution was poured into 2 L of EtOAc, washed with water (3 x 1 L), 5% aq. HCl soln. (2 x 1 L), sat. aq. NaHCO₃, and brine, then dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the title product as a white powder which was sufficiently pure for use in the next reaction.
- 30 Step C: Preparation of 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(acetoxymethyl)-imidazole hydrobromide
- A solution of 1-triphenylmethyl-4-(acetoxymethyl)imidazole (36.72 g, 96.14 mmol) and 4-bromomethyl-2-fluoro-benzonitrile, as 35 described in Example 9, Step D), (20.67 g, 96.14 mmol) in 250 mL of

EtOAc was stirred at 60 °C for 20 hours, during which a white precipitate formed. The reaction was cooled to room temperature and filtered to provide the solid imidazolium bromide salt. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to a volume of 100 mL, reheated at 60 °C for two hours, cooled to room temperature, and filtered again. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to a volume 40 mL, reheated at 60 °C for another two hours, cooled to room temperature, and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a pale yellow solid. All of the solid material was combined, dissolved in 300 mL of methanol, and warmed to 60 °C. After two hours, the solution was reconcentrated *in vacuo* to provide a white solid which was triturated with hexane to remove soluble materials. Removal of residual solvents *in vacuo* provided the title product hydrobromide as a white solid.

15 **Step D:** Preparation of acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester hydrochloride
To a solution of 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(acetoxymethyl)-imidazole hydrobromide (0.29 g, 1.06 mmol) in DMF (7.0 mL) was added 2-chlorophenol (0.132 mL, 1.27 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.691 g, 2.12 mmol). The mixture was heated to 55°C and stirred for 18 hr. The DMF was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO₃ solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H₂O, brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound after chromatography (SiO₂, CH₂Cl₂:CH₃OH: NH₄OH/ 98:2:0.2) and conversion to the hydrochloride salt.
FAB mass spectrum m/e 382 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for C₂₀H₁₆ClN₃O₃ • 1.4 HCl :

Found: C, 55.50; H, 4.05; N, 9.71.
 C, 55.55; H, 4.07; N, 9.41.

30

EXAMPLE 15

Preparation of 2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-(5-hydroxymethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

To a solution of acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester hydrochloride (as described in Example 14) (0.112 g, 0.268 mmol) in THF (2.0 mL) was added 1M NaOH (0.536 mL). After 3.5 hr. the reaction was partitioned between EtOAc and saturated NaHCO₃ solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H₂O, brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound after conversion to the hydrochloride salt.

5 FAB mass spectrum m/e 340 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for C₁₈H₁₄ClN₃O₂ • 1.0 HCl • 0.2 EtOAc :

10 C, 57.33; H, 4.25; N, 10.67.
Found: C, 57.68; H, 3.83; N, 10.65.

EXAMPLE 16

15 Preparation of 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile ditrifluoroacetate

Step A: Preparation of 4-(5-azidomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

20 To a solution of 2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-(5-hydroxymethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile hydrochloride, as described in Example 15, (0.07 g, 0.186 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (4.0 mL), and triethylamine (0.078 mL, 0.558 mmol) at 0°C was added methanesulfonyl chloride (0.016 mL, 0.205 mmol). The cooling bath was removed and the mixture 25 was stirred for 1hr. To this solution was added sodium azide (0.018 g, 0.277 mmol) in DMF (1.0 mL). After 1hr. the reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and saturated NaHCO₃ solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H₂O, brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title product which was used in the next 30 step without further purification.

Step B: Preparation of 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile ditrifluoroacetate

35 To a solution of 4-(5-azidomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile (0.05 g, 0.137 mmol) in CH₃OH (5.0 mL)

under argon was added 10% Pd/C (0.020 g). The mixture was placed under 1 atmosphere of hydrogen and stirred for 18 hr. The mixture was filtered and the CH₃OH was removed *in vacuo* to give the title compound after purification by preparative HPLC.

5 FAB mass spectrum m/e 339 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for C₁₈H₁₅ClN₄O • 2.2 HCl • 0.1 H₂O :

C, 45.49; H, 2.97; N, 9.47.

Found: C, 45.43; H, 2.92; N, 9.50.

10

EXAMPLE 17

Preparation of N-[3-[4-cyano-3-(2,3-dimethoxy-phenoxy)-benzyl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl]-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide hydrochloride

15 Step A: Preparation of 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(hydroxymethyl)imidazole
To a solution of 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(acetoxymethyl)imidazole hydrobromide (as described in Example 14, Step C) (31.87 g, 89.77 mmol) in 300 mL of 2:1 THF/water at 0 °C was added lithium
20 hydroxide monohydrate (7.53 g, 179 mmol). After two hours, the reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* to a 100 mL volume, stored at 0 °C for 30 minutes, then filtered and washed with 700 mL of cold water to provide a brown solid. This material was dried *in vacuo* over P₂O₅ to provide the titled product as a pale brown powder which was sufficiently pure for use in the next step without further purification.

Step B: Preparation of 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-fluoro-benzonitrile dihydrochloride

30 Following the procedures described in Example 16 but starting with 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(hydroxymethyl)imidazole (1.1 g, 4.85 mmol) the title compound was prepared.

Step C: Preparation of N-[3-(4-cyano-3-fluoro-benzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl]-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide

To a solution of 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-fluoro-benzonitrile dihydrochloride (0.17 g, 0.651 mmol) in DMF (5.0 mL) was added cyclohexylacetic acid (0.11 g, 0.782 mmol), BOP reagent (0.433 g, 0.977 mmol), and NMM (0.28 mL, 2.6 mmol). The mixture was 5 stirred for 18 hr. The DMF was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO₃ solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H₂O, brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, CH₂Cl₂:CH₃OH:NH₄OH/ 97:3:0.3).

10

Step D: Preparation of N-[3-[4-cyano-3-(2,3-dimethoxy-phenoxy)-benzyl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl]-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide hydrochloride

To a solution of N-[3-(4-cyano-3-fluoro-benzyl)-3H-imidazol-15 ylmethyl]-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide (0.16 g, 0.451 mmol) in acetonitrile (7.0 mL) was added 2,3-dimethoxyphenol (0.065 mL, 0.497 mmol), KF/Al₂O₃ (0.2 g), and 18-crown-6 (0.032 g). The mixture was refluxed for 20 hr. The acetonitrile was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO₃. The ethyl acetate layer was washed 20 with H₂O, brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Removal of the ethyl acetate *in vacuo* gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, CH₂Cl₂:CH₃OH:NH₄OH / 98:2:0 and conversion to the hydrochloride salt. FAB mass spectrum m/e 489 (M+1).

25

EXAMPLE 18

Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile trifluoroacetate

30

Step A: Preparation of 4-Bromo-3-fluorobenzaldehyde

To a well-stirred mixture of 4-bromo-3-fluorobenzyl alcohol (as described in Example 9, Step B) (10.25 g, 0.05 mol), TEMPO (0.781 g, 0.005 mol) and tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1.39 g, 0.005 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (200 mL) and a solution of 0.5M NaHCO₃/ 0.05M K₂CO₃ (200 mL) 35 was added N-chlorosuccinimide (9.35 g, 0.07 mol). After 6 hrs, the

layers were separated, the aqueous layer back-washed with CH₂Cl₂ (2 x 50 mL), the organics combined and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solution was filtered, concentrated to half its volume, then chromatographed (silica gel, CH₂Cl₂) to give the title compound.

- 5 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 9.96 (s, 1H), 7.78 (dd, 1H, J = 2, 8 Hz), 7.62 (dd, 1H, J = 2, 8 Hz), 7.56 (dd, 1H, J = 2, 8 Hz).

Step B: Preparation of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol

10 To a solution of 4-bromo-3-fluorobenzaldehyde (1.6 g, 7.88 mmol) in diethylether (20 mL) at 0°C was added 4-chlorophenyl-magnesiumbromide (1M/ether, 9.46 mL, 9.46 mmol) dropwise via syringe. The cooling bath was removed and after the mixture was stirred for 18 hr it was cooled to 0°C and saturated NH₄Cl solution (20 mL) was added to quench the reaction. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and saturated NaHCO₃ solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H₂O, brine, and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound as a solid after chromatography (silica gel, hexane:EtOAc/ 85:15).

20 Step C: Preparation of (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol

25 Following the procedure described in Example 9, Step C, but starting with (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol (2.2 g, 6.97 mmol), the title compound was obtained as a solid.

Step D: Preparation of 4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-2-fluoro-benzonitrile

30 To a solution of (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol (2.2 g, 8.79 mmol) in acetonitrile (30 mL) was added CDI (4.28 g, 8.79 mmol) and imidazole hydrochloride (2.75 g, 8.79 mmol) and the mixture was heated at reflux for 3 hr. The acetonitrile was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO₃ solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H₂O, brine, and

dried ($MgSO_4$). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound.

5 Step E: Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile trifluoroacetate

Following the procedure described in Example 11, Step A, but starting with 4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-2-fluorobenzonitrile, as described in Step D, (0.06 g, 0.193 mmol) and 3-chlorophenol (0.022 mL, 0.212 mmol), the the title compound was obtained after purification by preparative HPLC.

10 FAB mass spectrum m/e 420 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for $C_{23}H_{15}Cl_2N_3O \bullet 1.90\ TFA \bullet 0.40\ H_2O$:

15 C, 49.98; H, 2.77; N, 6.52.

Found: C, 49.98; H, 2.72; N, 6.36.

15

EXAMPLE 19

Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[1-(4-chloro-phenyl)-2-hydroxy-1-imidazol-1-yl-ethyl]-benzonitrile hydrochloride

20 To a solution of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile trifluoroacetate (0.065 g, 0.122 mmol) in acetonitrile (5 mL) was added 1M KOH (0.5 mL) (pH = 9-10) and 37% aqueous formaldehyde (0.14 mL) After stirring for 18hr the mixture was adjusted to pH = 3 with acetic acid, diluted with CH_3OH (3 mL) and purified on prep HPLC. The TFA salt was converted to the HCl salt to obtain the title compound.

25 FAB mass spectrum m/e 450 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for $C_{24}H_{17}Cl_2N_3O_2 \bullet 0.4\ CH_2Cl_2 \bullet 0.3\ H_2O$:

30 C, 57.13; H, 3.75; N, 8.06.

Found: C, 57.13; H, 3.82; N, 7.67.

EXAMPLE 20Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(3H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile

5

Step A: Preparation of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chlorophenyl)-methanol

4-Bromo-3-fluorobenzaldehyde (as described in Example 18, Step A) (3.61 g, 17.7 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous diethyl ether (40 mL). To this solution was added a 1.0M solution of 4-chlorophenyl-magnesium bromide (21.3 mL, 21.3 mmol). After stirring at ambient temperature for 4hr the reaction was quenched with satd. NH₄Cl and extracted with Et₂O. The organic layer was washed with satd NaHCO₃ solution, water, brine, dried (MgSO₄), concentrated and purified by chromatography (SiO₂, 10% EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound.

10
15

Step B: Preparation of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanone
(4-Bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol (2.26 g, 7.16 mmol) and MnO₂ (6.22g, 70.1 mmol) was stirred in CH₂Cl₂ (40 mL) for 40 hr. The solution was filtered through a celite pad and concentrated to give the title compound.

20
25

Step C: Preparation of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-(1-trityl-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-methanol
4-Iodo-1-trityl-1H-imidazole (1.39 g, 3.18 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL). To this solution was added a 3.0M solution of ethylmagnesium bromide (1.11 mL, 3.34 mmol) and stirred under Ar. After 3hr, a solution of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanone (1.00g, 3.18 mmol) dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL) was added dropwise and the resulting solution was stirred overnight. The reaction was quenched with satd. NH₄Cl solution, diluted with satd. NaHCO₃ solution to pH=8.5, and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3X). The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO₄), concentrated and purified

using SiO_2 chromatography (10-20% EtOAc/Hexane) to yield the title compound.

5 Step D: Preparation of 4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile
 (4-Bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methanol (0.360 g, 0.578 mmol) and $\text{Zn}(\text{CN})_2$ (0.045 g, 0.405 mmol) was stirred in anhydrous DMF (8 mL). The solution was purged with Ar for 10 min, degassed under high vacuum for 5 min, then 10 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.067 mg, 0.057 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred overnight at 80°C under Ar. Subsequent additions of $\text{Zn}(\text{CN})_2$ and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) were added to drive the reaction to completion. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc and extracted with satd. NaHCO_3 solution, water and brine, dried 15 (MgSO_4), concentrated and purified using SiO_2 chromatography (0.5% MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2) to yield the title compound.

20 Step E: Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile
 4-[(4-Chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-fluoro-benzonitrile (0.337 g, 0.591 mmol), 3-chlorophenol (0.074 mL, 0.709 mmol), 40% KF on alumina (0.182 g), and 18-Crown-6 ether (0.018 g, 0.068 mmol) were refluxed in CH_3CN for 40 hr under Ar. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with EtOAc, 25 washed with satd. NaHCO_3 solution, water, brine and dried (MgSO_4). Filtration and concentration gave the title compound.

30 Step F: Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile
 2-(3-Chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile (0.269 g, 0.396 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL), triethylsilane (0.050 mL, 3.17 mmol) was stirred in CH_2Cl_2 (5 mL) under Ar for 2hr. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO_3 35 solution, water, brine, dried (MgSO_4), concentrated and purified using

SiO₂ chromatography (1-1.5% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ w NH₄OH) to give the title compound. FAB MS (M+1) = 436
Analysis calculated for C₂₃H₁₅Cl₂N₃O₂ • 0.35 H₂O :

C, 62.41; H, 3.58; N, 9.49.
5 Found: C, 62.38; H, 3.68; N, 9.28.

EXAMPLE 21

Preparation of 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

Step A: Preparation of {2-[3-(4-cyano-3-fluoro-benzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl-ethyl]-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester}

To a solution of N^T-pivaloyloxymethyl-N^α-phthaloyl-15 histamine (J. C. Emmett, F. H. Holloway, and J. L. Turner, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1*, 1341, (1979)) (4.59 g, 0.0124 mmol) in acetonitrile (40 mL) was added 2-fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (as described in Example 9, Step D) (2.8 g, 0.013 mmol) and the mixture was heated to reflux for 18 hr. A white solid precipitate formed which after 20 cooling to 0°C was collected by filtration to obtain the quaternary salt. This intermediate was dissolved in EtOH (100 mL), hydrazine (1.46 mL, 0.046 mmol) was added, and the mixture was heated at reflux for 4 hr. A white precipitate was observed and the reaction was cooled to 25°C. Dimethylphthalate (11.4 mL, 0.0699 mmol) was added and the mixture 25 was again refluxed for 18 hr. After cooling to 25°C the precipitate was removed by filtration and washed with EtOAc. The filtrate was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue was dissolved in THF (125 mL) and H₂O (25 mL). To this solution was added solid Na₂CO₃ (4.0 g, 0.0377 mmol) and BOC₂O (4.47 g, 0.020 mmol) and the reaction was stirred for 30 18 hr. The THF was removed *in vacuo* and the mixture was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO₃. The EtOAc layer was washed with brine, dried with MgSO₄, and evaporated *in vacuo* to obtain the title product after chromatography (silica gel, CH₂Cl₂:MeOH:NH₄OH/97:3:0.3).

Step B: Preparation of 4-[5-(2-amino-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-2-fluoro-benzonitrile dihydrochloride

A solution of {2-[3-(4-cyano-3-fluoro-benzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl}-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (1.0 g, 0.0029 mmol) in EtOAc (30 mL) was cooled to -20°C and saturated with HCl gas. The cooling bath was removed and the reaction was stirred for 2 hr. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* to obtain the title compound which was used without further purification.

10 Step C: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

To a solution of 4-[5-(2-amino-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-2-fluoro-benzonitrile dihydrochloride (0.92 g, 0.0029 mmol) in acetonitrile (150 mL) and triethylamine (3.2 mL) was added 2-bromoethyl ether (0.839 mL, 0.0067 mmol) and the mixture was refluxed for 48 hr. The solvents were removed *in vacuo* and the residue was dissolved in EtOAc which was washed twice with 1M HCl (100 mL). The HCl layers were combined and adjusted to pH = 9 with solid Na₂CO₃ and extracted 3 times with EtOAc. The EtOAc layers were combined and dried with brine and MgSO₄. Removal of the EtOAc *in vacuo* yielded the title compound which was used as is in the next step.

Step D: Preparation of 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

25 Following the procedure described in Example 11, Step A, the title compound was prepared using 2-fluoro-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile (0.15 g, 0.477 mmol) and 2,4-dichlorothiophenol (0.086 g, 0.477 mmol).

FAB mass spectrum m/e 473 (M+1).

30 Analysis calculated for C₂₃H₂₂Cl₂N₄OS • 0.85 TFA • 0.3 H₂O :

C, 51.52; H, 4.11; N, 9.73.

Found: C, 51.51; H, 4.29; N, 9.36.

Following the above methods, the following compound was prepared:

2-(2,4-dichloro-phenoxy)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyll-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum m/e 457 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for $C_{23}H_{22}Cl_2N_4O_2 \bullet 0.4 H_2O$:

5 C, 59.34; H, 4.96; N, 12.04.

Found: C, 59.32; H, 4.89; N, 11.75.

EXAMPLE 22

10 Preparation of 4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Step A: Preparation of 2-Fluoro-4-formylbenzonitrile

2-Fluoro-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile (Example 9, Step C)

15 10 g, 0.066 mol) and triethylamine (32.3 mL, 0.231 mol) were dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 (100 mL)- DMSO (20 mL) at < 5°C. with stirring and treated dropwise with a solution of pyridine• SO_3 complex (31.5 g, 0.198 mol) in DMSO (70 mL) maintaining the reaction mixture temperature at <10°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 5°C for 1 hr after the addition, then 20 at 20°C. for 1 hr, then partitioned between CH_2Cl_2 and H_2O . The organic layer was separated, washed well with H_2O , brine, and dried (Na_2SO_4). Filtration and concentration gave the title compound after purification by chromatography (silica gel, hexane: EtOAc, 3:1).

25 1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ 10.06 (d, 1H, J = 2 Hz), 7.86 (dd, 1H, J = 5,8 Hz), 7.798 (dd, 1H, J = 1, 8 Hz), 7.728 (dd, 1H, J = 1, 8 Hz).

Step B: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile

30 To a solution of 4-iodo-1-trityl-1*H*-imidazole (5.00 g, 11.5 mmol) in anhydrous CH_2Cl_2 (30 mL) was added a 3.0M solution of ethylmagnesium bromide (6.58 mL, 19.7 mmol) with stirring under Ar. After 3h, the reaction mixture was cooled to -78°C and a solution of 2-fluoro-4-formyl-benzonitrile (1.70g, 11.5 mmol) dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 (20 mL) was added dropwise. The reaction was allowed to warm to RT over 35 2h, quenched with saturated NH_4Cl solution, diluted with satd. $NaHCO_3$

solution to pH=8.5, and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3X). The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO_4), concentrated and purified using SiO_2 chromatography (0-1% MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2) to yield the title compound.

5 Step C: Preparation of acetic acid (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(1-trityl-
1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl ester
2-Fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-
benzonitrile (4.05 g, 8.81 mmol), pyridine (2.14 mL, 26.4 mmol), and
acetic anhydride (12.5 mL, 132 mmol) were stirred in anhydrous DMF
10 (60 mL) for 3h under Ar. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo*,
diluted with EtOAc (250 mL), washed with H_2O (2X), brine, dried
(MgSO_4) and concentrated to give the title compound.

15 Step D: Preparation of acetic acid (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(3-
methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl ester
Acetic acid (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-
4-yl)-methyl ester (4.60 g, 9.17 mmol) and dimethyl sulfate (0.83 mL, 8.81
mmol) were dissolved in EtOAc (20 mL) and heated at 60°C overnight
under Ar. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with MeOH
20 (30 mL), and refluxed for 1h. Concentrated *in vacuo* and purified using
 SiO_2 chromatography (0.5 - 4% MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2 with NH_4OH) to give the
title compound.

25 Step E: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-
4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile
Acetic acid (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(3-methyl-3*H*-
imidazol-4-yl)-methyl ester (1.26 g, 4.59 mmol) and NaOH (5.5 mL, 5.5
mmol) were dissolved in THF (15 mL) and H_2O (25 mL). After 1h, the
reaction was diluted with satd. NaHCO_3 solution, extracted with CH_2Cl_2
30 (3X), dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated to give the title compound.

35 Step F: Preparation of 4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-
methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride
2-Fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-
benzonitrile (0.099 g, 0.428 mmol), 2-naphthol (0.062 g, 0.4287 mmol) and

Cs₂CO₃ (0.279 g, 0.856 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMSO (5 mL) and heated at 80°C under Ar for 1.5h. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO₃ solution, water, and brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), concentrated and purified using SiO₂ chromatography (1-2.5% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂). The purified compound was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ and treated with 1N HCl ethereal solution to give the title compound.

5 FAB MS (M+1) = 365.
Analysis calculated for C₂₂H₁₇N₃O₂ • 1.00 HCl • 1.60 H₂O:
10 Found: C, 62.81; H, 5.08; N, 9.99
Found: C, 62.81; H, 4.98; N, 10.20.

EXAMPLE 23

15 Preparation of 4-[amino-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
4-[Hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile (as described in Example 22) (0.219 g, 0.616 mmol) was dissolved in SOCl₂ (5 mL) and stirred at RT for 2h
20 under Ar₂. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and azeotroped with CH₂Cl₂ (3X). The solid was dissolved in CHCl₃ (20 mL) and cooled to -78°C. NH_{3(g)} was bubbled through the solution, and the reaction was stirred for 4h while warming to RT under Ar. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and the title compound was obtained after
25 purification (RPLC (95/5 - 5/95 H₂O/CH₃CN with 0.1% TFA, flow = 65 mL/min).

EXAMPLE 24

30 Preparation of 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

Step A: Preparation of 4-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazole-4-carbonyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

2-Fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile (as described in Example 22, Step E) (0.172 g, 0.743 mmol), 2-naphthol (0.107 g, 0.743 mmol) and Cs₂CO₃ (0.727 g, 2.23 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMF (5 mL) and heated at 60°C under Ar for 2 days. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO₃ solution, water, and brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), concentrated and purified using SiO₂ chromatography (1-2% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) to give the title compound.

Step B: Preparation of 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-(3-Methyl-3*H*-imidazole-4-carbonyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile (0.109 g, 0.308 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (5 mL) and a 3.0 M solution of MeMgBr (0.35 mL, 1.05 mmol) was added and stirred at RT. The reaction was quenched with NH₄Cl after 1h, concentrated, diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO₃ solution, water, brine, dried(MgSO₄) and concentrated to give the title compound. FT/ICR MS (M+1) = 370.

Analysis calculated for C₂₃H₁₉N₃O₂ • 0.40 EtOAc • 0.05 H₂O:

C, 72.85; H, 5.54; N, 10.36

Found: C, 72.87; H, 5.31; N, 10.29.

25

EXAMPLE 25

Preparation of 4-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

4-[1-Hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile (as described in Example 24) (0.068 g, 0.184 mmol) was dissolved in SOCl₂ (5 mL) and stirred at RT for 1.5h. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and azeotroped with anhydrous

- CH₂Cl₂ (3X). The solid was dissolved in CHCl₃ (5 mL) and cooled to -78°C. NH_{3(g)} was bubbled through the solution and stirred for 4h while warming to RT under Ar. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified using reverse phase chromatography (95/5 - 5/95 H₂O/CH₃CN with 0.1% TFA, flow = 65 mL/min). The compound was converted to its free base using saturated NaHCO₃ solution, extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3x), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and treated with 1N HCl ethereal solution to give the title compound. FT/ICR MS (M+1) = 369.
- 10 Using the method described above, but substituting 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide (as described in Example 26, Step C), the following compound was prepared:
- 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide.
- 15 FT/ICR MS (M+1) = 466
Analysis calculated for C₂₈H₂₇N₅O₂ • 0.15 H₂O:
C, 71.81; H, 5.88; N, 14.96;
Found: C, 71.86; H, 5.59; N, 14.78.
- 20

EXAMPLE 26

- Preparation of 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide
-
- 25 Step A: Preparation of 2-Fluoro-4-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazole-4-carbonyl)-benzonitrile
- 2-Fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile (as described in Example 22, Step E) (0.655 g, 2.83 mmol) and MnO₂ (1.23 g, 14.2 mmol) were stirred in CH₂Cl₂ (50 mL) and CH₃CN (5 mL) for 72 h. The solution was filtered and concentrated to yield the title compound.

Step B: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

2-Fluoro-4-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazole-4-carbonyl)-benzonitrile (0.603 g, 2.63 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (30 mL). A 5 solution of 3.0M MeMgBr in diethyl ether (2.55 mL, 7.65 mmol) was added and stirred for 15 min. The reaction was quenched with NH₄Cl solution, diluted with CH₂Cl₂ and saturated NaHCO₃ solution and separated. The aqueous layer was back extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3X), the combined organic layers dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to give the title 10 compound.

Step C: Preparation of 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyll-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

2-Fluoro-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile (0.054 g, 0.220 mmol), *N*-ethyl-3-hydroxy-*N*-phenyl-benzamide (0.053 g, 0.220 mmol) and Cs₂CO₃ (0.143 g, 0.440 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMF (5 mL) and heated at 60°C under Ar for 4 days. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO₃ solution, water, and brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), 15 concentrated and purified using SiO₂ chromatography (1-3% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) to give the title compound. FAB MS (M+1) = 467 Analysis calculated for C₂₈H₂₆N₄O₂ • 0.65 H₂O:

C, 70.31; H, 5.75; N, 11.72

Found: C, 70.31; H, 5.65; N, 11.77.

25

Using the procedures described above but substituting the requisite phenol in Step C, the following compounds were prepared:

4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

30 FAB MS (M+1) = 411

4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

FAB MS (M+1) = 412

5 2-(3-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

FAB MS (M+1) = 424

10 2-(3-*tert*-butyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

FAB MS (M+1) = 376

15 2-(3-diethylamino-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]- benzonitrile

FAB MS (M+1) = 391

EXAMPLE 27

Preparation of 2-(5-Chloro-2-oxo-2*H*-[1,2']bipyridinyl-5'-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

20

Step A: Preparation of 5-Chloro-5'-methyl-[1,2']bipyridinyl-2-one

5-Chloro-2-pyridinol (2.26 g, 17.4 mmol), 2-bromo-5-methylpyridine (3.00 g, 17.4 mmol), copper (0.022 g, 0.35 mmol) and K₂CO₃ (2.66 g, 19.2 mmol) were heated at 180°C for 16 hrs. The brown reaction mixture was cooled, diluted with EtOAc and washed with saturated NaHCO₃. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2x) and the combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel, EtOAc: CH₂Cl₂ 20:80 to 50:50 gradient elution) to afford the title compound as a white solid.

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.37 (s, 1H), 7.96(d, J=3.0Hz, 1H), 7.83 (d, J=8.4Hz, 1H), 7.65(dd, J=2.4 and 8.2Hz, 1H), 7.32(dd, J=2.9 and 9.7 Hz, 1H), 6.61(d, J=9.7Hz, 1H) and 2.39(s,3H)ppm.

Step B: Preparation of 5'-Bromomethyl-5-chloro-[1,2']bipyridinyl-2-one

A solution of 5-chloro-5'-methyl-[1,2']bipyridinyl-2-one (as described in Step A above) (1.00 g, 4.53 mmol), N-bromosuccinimide (0.81 g, 4.53 mmol) and AIBN (0.030 g, 0.18 mmol) in CCl₄ (40mL) was heated at reflux for 2 hrs. The solids were filtered and the filtrate collected. The solvent was evaporated in vacuo and the residue chromatographed (silica gel, EtOAc: CH₂Cl₂ 25:75 to 50:50 gradient elution) to afford the title bromide.

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.55 (s, 1H), 8.04 (d, J= 2.9 Hz, 1H), 8.01 (d, J=8.4Hz, 1H), 7.88 (dd, J=2.4 and 8.6Hz, 1H), 7.34(dd, J= 2.9 and 9.8Hz, 1H), 6.61(d, J=9.9Hz, 1H) and 4.51 (s,2H) ppm.

15 Step C: Preparation of 2-(5-Chloro-2-oxo-2*H*-[1,2']bipyridinyl-5'-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

Cesium carbonate (0.123 g, 0.376 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (as described in Example 4, Step F) (0.050 g, 0.25 mmol) and 5'-bromomethyl-5-chloro-[1,2']bipyridinyl-2-one (Step H) (0.079 g, 0.263 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (5 mL) and stirred at ambient temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and aqueous saturated NaHCO₃ solution, the organic layer separated, washed with H₂O, brine and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, 1-4% CH₃OH/CH₂Cl₂). FAB MS 418 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 28

30 Preparation of 4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[2-(2-oxo-2*H*-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

Step A: Preparation of 2-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-anisole

2-Iodoanisole (1.30 mL, 0.01 mol), 2-hydroxypyridine (0.95 g, 0.01 mol), anhydrous K_2CO_3 (2.76 g, 0.02 mol) and copper powder (0.0636 g, 0.001 mol) were combined and heated at 200°C. for 2 hr. The reaction mixture was cooled, EtOAc added, and filtered. The filtrate was washed with H_2O , aqueous saturated $NaHCO_3$ solution, brine, and dried (Na_2SO_4). Filtration and concentration gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, 2% CH_3OH , CH_2Cl_2).
 1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ 7.36 - 7.44 (m, 2H), 7.25 - 7.29 (m, 1H), 7.18 - 7.22 (m, 1H), 7.03 - 7.08 (m, 2H), 6.65 (d, 1H, J = 10 Hz), 6.195 (td, 1H, J = 1, 7 Hz), 3.82 (s, 3H).

Step B: Preparation of 2-(2-Oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-phenol

Sodium ethanethiol (0.108 g, 1.29 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-anisole (0.100 g, 0.497 mmol) in DMF (2 mL), and the reaction mixture was heated at 100°C. for 3 hr. The reaction mixture was partitioned between $CHCl_3$ and saturated aqueous ammonium chloride and treated with 8N HCl (pH = 1). The organic layer was separated, washed with H_2O , brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered, concentrated, and taken up in EtOAc, then extracted with 2% NaOH solution. The aqueous basic layer was acidified with 10% HCl solution, then extracted with EtOAc, the organic layer washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered, and concentrated to give the desired product.

25 Step C: Preparation of 4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[2-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

2-Fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (as described in Example 9, Step E) (0.0276 g, 0.137 mmol), 2-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-phenol (0.0257 g, 0.137 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.089 g, 0.274 mmol) were combined in DMF (1.2 mL) and heated at 70°C. for 18 hr. The title compound was obtained after RP HPLC on a Waters Prep Pak column eluting with a 0.1%TFA/ H_2O : 0.1%TFA/ CH_3CN gradient followed by conversion to the free base.
FAB MS 369 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for $C_{22}H_{16}N_4O_2 \bullet 0.3 Et_2O$:

C, 71.33; H, 4.90; N, 14.34.

Found: C, 71.36; H, 4.83; N, 14.31.

- 5 Using the procedures described above , but using the appropriate iodoanisole in Step C, the following compound is prepared:

4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

FAB MS 369 (M+1).

10

EXAMPLE 29

In vitro inhibition of ras farnesyl transferase

- Assays of farnesyl-protein transferase. Partially purified bovine FPTase and Ras peptides (Ras-CVLS, Ras-CVIM and Ras-CAIL (SEQ.ID.NO.: 12) were prepared as described by Schaber *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 265:14701-14704 (1990), Pompliano, *et al.*, *Biochemistry* 31:3800 (1992) and Gibbs *et al.*, *PNAS U.S.A.* 86:6630-6634 (1989), respectively. Bovine FPTase was assayed in a volume of 100 μ l containing 100 mM N-(2-hydroxy ethyl) piperazine-N'-(2-ethane sulfonic acid) (HEPES), pH 7.4, 5 mM MgCl₂, 5 mM dithiothreitol (DTT), 100 nM [³H]-farnesyl diposphate ([³H]-FPP; 740 CBq/mmol, New England Nuclear), 650 nM Ras-CVLS and 10 μ g/ml FPTase at 31°C for 60 min. Reactions were initiated with FPTase and stopped with 1 ml of 1.0 M HCL in ethanol.
- Precipitates were collected onto filter-mats using a TomTec Mach II cell harvester, washed with 100% ethanol, dried and counted in an LKB β -plate counter. The assay was linear with respect to both substrates, FPTase levels and time; less than 10% of the [³H]-FPP was utilized during the reaction period. Purified compounds were dissolved in 100% dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and were diluted 20-fold into the assay. Percentage inhibition is measured by the amount of incorporation of radioactivity in the presence of the test compound when compared to the amount of incorporation in the absence of the test compound.
- Human FPTase was prepared as described by Omer *et al.*, *Biochemistry* 32:5167-5176 (1993). Human FPTase activity was assayed

as described above with the exception that 0.1% (w/v) polyethylene glycol 20,000, 10 μ M ZnCl₂ and 100 nM Ras-CVIM were added to the reaction mixture. Reactions were performed for 30 min., stopped with 100 μ L of 30% (v/v) trichloroacetic acid (TCA) in ethanol and processed as
5 described above for the bovine enzyme.

The compounds of the instant invention described in the above Examples were tested for inhibitory activity against human FPTase by the assay described above and were found to have IC₅₀ of <50 μ M.

10

EXAMPLE 30

Modified *In vitro* GGTase inhibition assay

The modified geranylgeranyl-protein transferase inhibition assay is carried out at room temperature. A typical reaction contains (in a final volume of 50 μ L): [³H]geranylgeranyl diphosphate, biotinylated Ras peptide, 50 mM HEPES, pH 7.5, a modulating anion (for example 10 mM glycerophosphate or 5mM ATP), 5 mM MgCl₂, 10 μ M ZnCl₂, 0.1% PEG (15-20,000), 2 mM dithiothreitol, and geranylgeranyl-
15 protein transferase type I(GGTase). The GGTase-type I enzyme employed in the assay is prepared as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,470,832, incorporated by reference. The Ras peptide is derived from the K4B-Ras protein and has the following sequence: biotinyl-GKKKKKKSKTKCVIM (single amino acid code) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 13).
20 Reactions are initiated by the addition of GGTase and stopped at timed intervals (typically 15 min) by the addition of 200 μ L of a 3 mg/mL suspension of streptavidin SPA beads (Scintillation Proximity Assay beads, Amersham) in 0.2 M sodium phosphate, pH 4, containing 50 mM EDTA, and 0.5% BSA. The quenched reactions are allowed to stand for 2
25 hours before analysis on a Packard TopCount scintillation counter.
30

For inhibition studies, assays are run as described above, except inhibitors are prepared as concentrated solutions in 100% dimethyl sulfoxide and then diluted 25-fold into the enzyme assay mixture. IC₅₀ values are determined with Ras peptide near K_M

concentrations. Enzyme and nonsaturating substrate conditions for inhibitor IC₅₀ determinations are as follows: 75 pM GGTase-I, 1.6 μM Ras peptide, 100 nM geranylgeranyl diphosphate.

5

EXAMPLE 31

Cell-based *in vitro* ras prenylation assay

The cell lines used in this assay consist of either Rat1 or NIH3T3 cells transformed by either viral H-ras; an N-ras chimeric gene in which the C-terminal hypervariable region of viral-H-ras was substituted with the corresponding region from the N-ras gene; or ras-CVLL, a viral-H-ras mutant in which the C-terminal exon encodes leucine instead of serine, making the encoded protein a substrate for geranylgeranylation by GGTase-I. The assay can also be performed using cell lines transformed with human H-ras, N-ras or K4B-ras. The assay is performed essentially as described in DeClue, J.E. et al., Cancer Research 51:712-717, (1991). Cells in 10 cm dishes at 50-75% confluence are treated with the test compound(s) (final concentration of solvent, methanol or dimethyl sulfoxide, is 0.1%). After 4 hours at 37°C, the cells are labelled in 3 ml methionine-free DMEM supplemented with 10% regular DMEM, 2% fetal bovine serum, 400 μCi[³⁵S]methionine (1000 Ci/mmol) and test compound(s). Cells treated with lovastatin, a compound that blocks Ras processing in cells by inhibiting the rate-limiting step in the isoprenoid biosynthetic pathway (Hancock, J.F. et al. Cell, 57:1167 (1989); DeClue, J.E. et al. Cancer Res., 51:712 (1991); Sinensky, M. et al. J. Biol. Chem., 265:19937 (1990)), serve as a positive control in this assay. After an additional 20 hours, the cells are lysed in 1 ml lysis buffer (1% NP40/20 mM HEPES, pH 7.5/5 mM MgCl₂/1mM DTT/10 mg/ml aprotinin/2 mg/ml leupeptin/2 mg/ml antipain/0.5 mM PMSF) and the lysates cleared by centrifugation at 100,000 x g for 45 min. Alternatively, four hours after the addition of the labelling media, the media is removed, the cells washed, and 3 ml of media containing the same or a different test compound added. Following an additional 16 hour incubation, the lysis is carried out as above. Aliquots of lysates containing equal numbers of acid-precipitable counts are brought to 1 ml

with IP buffer (lysis buffer lacking DTT) and immunoprecipitated with the ras-specific monoclonal antibody Y13-259 (Furth, M.E. et al., J. Virol. 43:294-304, (1982)). Following a 2 hour antibody incubation at 4°C, 200 µl of a 25% suspension of protein A-Sepharose coated with rabbit anti rat IgG is added for 45 min. The immunoprecipitates are washed four times with IP buffer (20 nM HEPES, pH 7.5/1 mM EDTA/1% Triton X-100/0.5% deoxycholate/0.1%/SDS/0.1 M NaCl) boiled in SDS-PAGE sample buffer and loaded on 13% acrylamide gels. When the dye front reached the bottom, the gel is fixed, soaked in Enlightening, dried and autoradiographed. The intensities of the bands corresponding to prenylated and nonprenylated Ras proteins are compared to determine the percent inhibition of prenyl transfer to protein.

EXAMPLE 32

15

Cell-based *in vitro* anchorage independent growth assay (SALSA)

SALSA (Soft Agar-Like Surrogate Assay) measures the inhibition of anchorage-independent growth by prenyl-transferase inhibitors. Only transformed cells are able to grow anchorage-independently in the SALSA format. Additionally, cells growing in the SALSA format grow in clumps, resembling the colonies formed in soft agar. SALSA may been used to measure the growth inhibition by prenyl-transferase inhibitors in a variety of transformed cell lines, including Rat1 fibroblasts transformed with viral-H-ras (H-ras/rat1), as well as a panel of human tumor cell lines (HTL's).

SALSA is performed in 96-well plates that are coated with a thin film of the polymer, PolyHEMA (Poly(2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate)), which prevents cells from attaching to the plate. Rat1 fibroblast cells transformed with v-Ha-ras (this cell line has been deposited in the ATCC on August 19, 1997 under the terms of the Budapest convention and has been given a designation of ATCC CRL 12387) are seeded at 5000 cells/well, grown for 4 hr, then vehicle or half-log dilutions of test compound (in either an 8 or 12 point titration) are added. The cells are then grown for 6 days at 37 degrees, without changing the growth media or adding fresh compound. At day 6, cell

growth is assessed via a colorimetric assay that measures the cleavage of the tetrazolium dye, MTT, to an insoluble purple formazan, a reaction dependent upon mitochondrial dehydrogenases. At day 6, the cells are incubated for 4 hr with 0.5 mg/ml MTT, and then SDS is added to 9% w/v
5 to lyse the cells and solubilize the insoluble MTT-formazan. The amount of MTT metabolism is quantitated via spectrophotometric detection at 570 nM. Dose-inhibition curves and IC₅₀'s are determined.

EXAMPLE 33

10

Construction of SEAP reporter plasmid pDSE100

The SEAP reporter plasmid, pDSE100 was constructed by ligating a restriction fragment containing the SEAP coding sequence into the plasmid pCMV-RE-AKI. The SEAP gene is derived from the plasmid pSEAP2-Basic (Clontech, Palo Alto, CA). The plasmid pCMV-RE-AKI was constructed by Deborah Jones (Merck) and contains 15 5 sequential copies of the 'dyad symmetry response element' cloned upstream of a 'CAT-TATA' sequence derived from the cytomegalovirus immediate early promoter. The plasmid also contains a bovine growth 20 hormone poly-A sequence.

The plasmid, pDSE100 was constructed as follows. A restriction fragment encoding the SEAP coding sequence was cut out of the plasmid pSEAP2-Basic using the restriction enzymes EcoR1 and HpaI. The ends of the linear DNA fragments were filled in with the 25 Klenow fragment of *E. coli* DNA Polymerase I. The 'blunt ended' DNA containing the SEAP gene was isolated by electrophoresing the digest in an agarose gel and cutting out the 1694 base pair fragment. The vector plasmid pCMV-RE-AKI was linearized with the restriction enzyme Bgl-II and the ends filled in with Klenow DNA Polymerase I. The SEAP 30 DNA fragment was blunt end ligated into the pCMV-RE-AKI vector and the ligation products were transformed into DH5-alpha *E. coli* cells (Gibco-BRL). Transformants were screened for the proper insert and then mapped for restriction fragment orientation. Properly oriented recombinant constructs were sequenced across the cloning junctions to 35 verify the correct sequence. The resulting plasmid contains the SEAP

coding sequence downstream of the DSE and CAT-TATA promoter elements and upstream of the BGH poly-A sequence.

Cloning of a Myristylated viral-H-ras expression plasmid

5

A DNA fragment containing viral-H-ras can be PCR'd from plasmid "H-1" (Ellis R. et al. J. Virol. **36**, 408, 1980) using the following oligos.

Sense strand:

10 5'TCTCCTCGAGGCCACCATGGGGAGTAGCAAGAGCAAGCCTAA
GGACCCAGCCAGCGCCGGATGACAGAATACAAGCTTGTGGTG
G 3'. (SEQ.ID.NO.: 14)

15 Antisense: 5'CACATCTAGATCAGGACAGCACAGACTTGCAGC 3'.
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 15)

20 A sequence encoding the first 15 aminoacids of the v-src gene, containing a myristylation site, is incorporated into the sense strand oligo. The sense strand oligo also optimizes the 'Kozak' translation initiation sequence immediately 5' to the ATG start site. To prevent prenylation at the viral-ras C-terminus, cysteine 186 would be mutated to a serine by substituting a G residue for a C residue in the C-terminal antisense oligo. The PCR primer oligos introduce an XhoI site at the 5' end and a XbaI site at the 3'end. The XhoI-XbaI fragment can be ligated 25 into the mammalian expression plasmid pCI (Promega) cut with XhoI and XbaI. This results in a plasmid in which the recombinant myr-viral-H-ras gene is constitutively transcribed from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

30 Cloning of a viral-H-ras-CVLL expression plasmid

A viral-H-ras clone with a C-terminal sequence encoding the amino acids CVLL can be cloned from the plasmid "H-1" (Ellis R. et al. J. Virol. **36**, 408, 1980) by PCR using the following oligos.

35

Sense strand:

5'TCTCCTCGAGGCCACCATGACAGAATAACAAGCTTGTGGTGG-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 16)

5 Antisense strand:

5'CACTCTAGACTGGTGTCA~~GAG~~CAGCACACACTTGCAGC-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 17)

The sense strand oligo optimizes the 'Kozak' sequence and adds an XhoI site. The antisense strand mutates serine 189 to leucine and adds an XbaI site. The PCR fragment can be trimmed with XhoI and XbaI and ligated into the XhoI-XbaI cut vector pCI (Promega). This results in a plasmid in which the mutated viral-H-ras-CVLL gene is constitutively transcribed from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

15

Cloning of c-H-ras-Leu61 expression plasmid

The human c-H-ras gene can be PCRed from a human cerebral cortex cDNA library (Clontech) using the following oligonucleotide primers.

20 Sense strand:

5'-GAGAGAATTGCCACCATGACGGAATATAAGCTGGTGG-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 18)

Antisense strand:

25 5'-GAGAGTCGACGCGTCAGGAGAGCACACACTTGC-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 19)

The primers will amplify a c-H-ras encoding DNA fragment with the primers contributing an optimized 'Kozak' translation start sequence, an EcoRI site at the N-terminus and a Sal I site at the C-terminal end. After trimming the ends of the PCR product with EcoRI and Sal I, the c-H-ras fragment can be ligated into an EcoRI -Sal I cut mutagenesis vector pAlter-1 (Promega). Mutation of glutamine-61 to a leucine can be accomplished using the manufacturer's protocols and 35 the following oligonucleotide:

5'-CCGCCGGCCTGGAGGAGTACAG-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 20)

After selection and sequencing for the correct nucleotide substitution,
5 the mutated c-H-ras-Leu61 can be excised from the pAlter-1 vector,
using EcoRI and Sal I, and be directly ligated into the vector pCI
(Promega) which has been digested with EcoRI and Sal I. The new
recombinant plasmid will constitutively transcribe c-H-ras-Leu61 from
the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

10

Cloning of a c-N-ras-Val-12 expression plasmid

The human c-N-ras gene can be PCRed from a human cerebral cortex
cDNA library (Clontech) using the following oligonucleotide primers.

15

Sense strand:

5'-GAGAGAATTGCCACCATGACTGAGTACAAACTGGTGG-3'
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 21)

20

Antisense strand:

5'-GAGAGTCGACTTGTACATCACACACATGGC-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.:
22)

25

The primers will amplify a c-N-ras encoding DNA fragment with the
primers contributing an optimized 'Kozak' translation start sequence,
an EcoRI site at the N-terminus and a Sal I stite at the C-terminal end.
After trimming the ends of the PCR product with EcoRI and Sal I, the c-
N-ras fragment can be ligated into an EcoRI -Sal I cut mutagenesis
vector pAlter-1 (Promega). Mutation of glycine-12 to a valine can be
30 accomplished using the manufacturer's protocols and the following
oligonucleotide:

5'-GTTGGAGCAGTTGGTGTGGG-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 23)

After selection and sequencing for the correct nucleotide substitution, the mutated c-N-ras-Val-12 can be excised from the pAlter-1 vector, using EcoRI and Sal I, and be directly ligated into the vector pCI (Promega) which has been digested with EcoRI and Sal I. The new
5 recombinant plasmid will constitutively transcribe c-N-ras-Val-12 from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

Cloning of a c-K-ras-Val-12 expression plasmid

10 The human c-K-ras gene can be PCR'd from a human cerebral cortex cDNA library (Clontech) using the following oligonucleotide primers.

Sense strand:

5'-GAGAGGTACCGCCACCATGACTGAATATAAACTTGTGG-3'

15 (SEQ.ID.NO.: 24)

Antisense strand:

5'-CTCTGTCGACGTATTACATAATTACACACACTTGTC-3'

(SEQ.ID.NO.: 25)

20

The primers will amplify a c-K-ras encoding DNA fragment with the primers contributing an optimized 'Kozak' translation start sequence, a KpnI site at the N-terminus and a Sal I site at the C-terminal end.

25 After trimming the ends of the PCR product with Kpn I and Sal I, the c-K-ras fragment can be ligated into a KpnI -Sal I cut mutagenesis vector pAlter-1 (Promega). Mutation of cysteine-12 to a valine can be accomplished* using the manufacturer's protocols and the following oligonucleotide:

30 5'-GTAGTTGGAGCTGTTGGCGTAGGC-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 26)

After selection and sequencing for the correct nucleotide substitution, the mutated c-K-ras-Val-12 can be excised from the pAlter-1 vector, using KpnI and Sal I, and be directly ligated into the vector pCI
35 (Promega) which has been digested with KpnI and Sal I. The new

recombinant plasmid will constitutively transcribe c-K-ras-Val-12 from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

SEAP assay

5 Human C33A cells (human epithelial carcinoma - ATTC collection) are seeded in 10cm tissue culture plates in DMEM + 10% fetal calf serum + 1X Pen/Strep + 1X glutamine + 1X NEAA. Cells are grown at 37°C in a 5% CO₂ atmosphere until they reach 50 -80% of confluence.

10 The transient transfection is performed by the CaPO₄ method (Sambrook et al., 1989). Thus, expression plasmids for H-ras, N-ras, K-ras, Myr-ras or H-ras-CVLL are co-precipitated with the DSE-SEAP reporter construct. For 10cm plates 600µl of CaCl₂-DNA solution is added dropwise while vortexing to 600µl of 2X HBS buffer to give 1.2ml of precipitate solution (see recipes below). This is allowed to sit at room temperature for 20 to 30 minutes. While the precipitate is forming, the media on the C33A cells is replaced with DMEM (minus phenol red; Gibco cat. # 31053-028)+ 0.5% charcoal stripped calf serum + 1X (Pen/Strep, Glutamine and nonessential aminoacids). The CaPO₄-DNA precipitate is added dropwise to the cells and the plate rocked gently to distribute. DNA uptake is allowed to proceed for 5-6 hrs at 37°C under a 5% CO₂ atmosphere.

15 Following the DNA incubation period, the cells are washed with PBS and trypsinized with 1ml of 0.05% trypsin. The 1 ml of trypsinized cells is diluted into 10ml of phenol red free DMEM + 0.2% charcoal stripped calf serum + 1X (Pen/Strep, Glutamine and NEAA). Transfected cells are plated in a 96 well microtiter plate (100µl/well) to which drug, diluted in media, has already been added in a volume of 100µl. The final volume per well is 200µl with each drug concentration repeated in triplicate over a range of half-log steps.

20 Incubation of cells and drugs is for 36 hrs at 37° under CO₂. At the end of the incubation period, cells are examined microscopically for evidence of cell distress. Next, 100µl of media containing the secreted alkaline phosphatase is removed from each well and transferred to a 25 microtube array for heat treatment at 65°C for 1 hr to inactivate

endogenous alkaline phosphatases (but not the heat stable secreted phosphatase).

The heat treated media is assayed for alkaline phosphatase by a luminescence assay using the luminescence reagent CSPD® (Tropix, Bedford, Mass.). A volume of 50 µl media is combined with 200 µl of CSPD cocktail and incubated for 60 minutes at room temperature. Luminescence is monitored using an ML2200 microplate luminometer (Dynatech). Luminescence reflects the level of activation of the fos reporter construct stimulated by the transiently expressed protein.

DNA-CaPO₄ precipitate for 10cm. plate of cells

	Ras expression plasmid (1µg/µl)	10µl
15	DSE-SEAP Plasmid (1µg/µl)	2µl
	Sheared Calf Thymus DNA (1µg/µl)	8µl
	2M CaCl ₂	74µl
	dH ₂ O	506µl

20 2X HBS Buffer

	280mM NaCl
	10mM KCl
	1.5mM Na ₂ HPO ₄ 2H ₂ O
25	12mM dextrose
	50mM HEPES
	Final pH = 7.05

Luminescence Buffer (26ml)

30	Assay Buffer	20ml
	Emerald Reagent™ (Tropix)	2.5ml
	100mM homoarginine	2.5ml
	CSPD Reagent® (Tropix)	1.0ml

35 Assay Buffer

Add 0.05M Na₂CO₃ to 0.05M NaHCO₃ to obtain pH 9.5. Make 1mM in MgCl₂

EXAMPLE 34

5 **In vivo tumor growth inhibition assay (nude mouse)**

In vivo efficacy as an inhibitor of the growth of cancer cells may be confirmed by several protocols well known in the art. Examples of such *in vivo* efficacy studies are described by N. E. Kohl et al. (*Nature Medicine*, 1:792-797 (1995)) and N. E. Kohl et al. (*Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.*

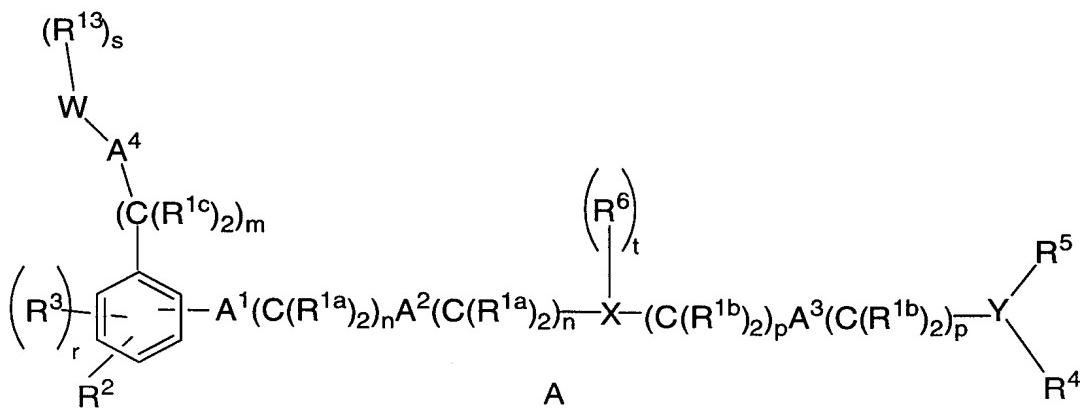
10 *U.S.A.*, 91:9141-9145 (1994)).

Rodent fibroblasts transformed with oncogenically mutated human Ha-ras or Ki-ras (10⁶ cells/animal in 1 ml of DMEM salts) are injected subcutaneously into the left flank of 8-12 week old female nude mice (Harlan) on day 0. The mice in each oncogene group are randomly assigned to a vehicle, compound or combination treatment group.

15 Animals are dosed subcutaneously starting on day 1 and daily for the duration of the experiment. Alternatively, the farnesyl-protein transferase inhibitor may be administered by a continuous infusion pump. Compound, compound combination or vehicle is delivered in a total volume of 0.1 ml. Tumors are excised and weighed when all of the vehicle-treated animals exhibited lesions of 0.5 - 1.0 cm in diameter, typically 11-15 days after the cells were injected. The average weight of the tumors in each treatment group for each cell line is calculated.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of formula A:



5

wherein:

R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

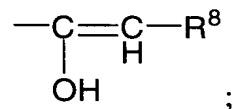
R² is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted

- h) N₃,
- i) R⁹S(O)_q,
- j) R⁸HC=CH-,
- k) R⁸C≡C-, and
- 5 l) OR⁸;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
- 10 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
- C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
- NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
- (C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)R⁸, -CH=CH-R⁸ and



15 R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 20 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O-,
- i) N₃,
- 25 j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
- k) -HC=CH₂,
- l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF₃
- n) R⁸O(C=O)-, and
- 30 o) R⁸(O=C)O-;

R⁸ is independently selected from

hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from

5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R¹³ is independently selected from

10 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

A¹, A² and A³ are independently selected from:

- 15 a) a bond,
b) -HC=CH-,
c) -C≡C-,
d) -O-,
e) -(C=O)-,
20 f) -O(C=O)-,
g) -(C=O)O-,
h) -NR⁸-,
i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
25 k) -NHC(O)NH-,
l) -S(O)_q-,
m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
n) -NHS(O)_q-;

30 A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
b) heterocycle, and

c) aryl;

X is selected from:

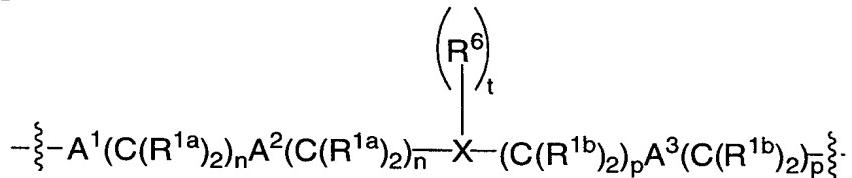
- 5 a) aryl,
 b) cycloalkyl,
 c) heterocycle, and
 d) a bond;

Y is selected from:

- 10 a) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
 b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
 c) cycloalkyl;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
15 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 q is 0, 1 or 2;
 r is 0, 1, 2 or 3;
 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and;
20 t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

provided that

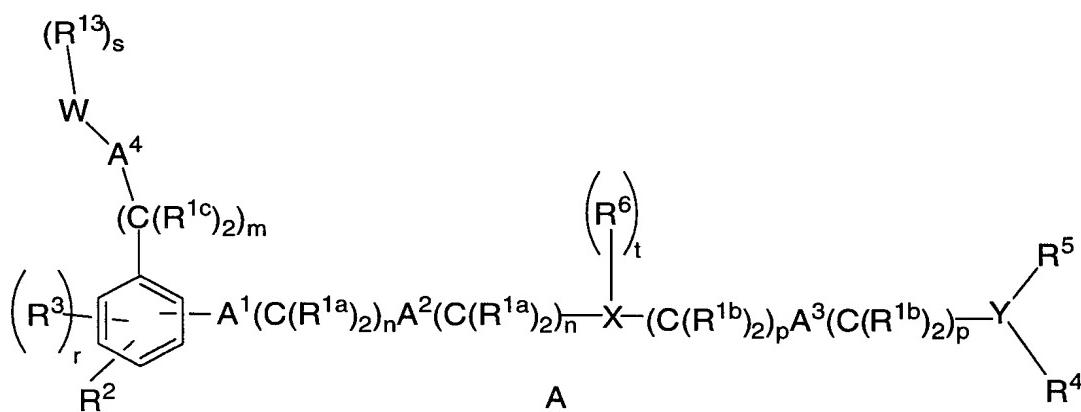


is not a bond;

25

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

2. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula A:



wherein:

R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- 5 a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

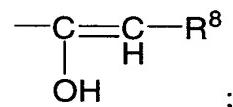
15 R² is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 20 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) N₃,
- i) R⁹S(O)_q,
- 25 j) R⁸HC=C-,

- k) $R^8C\equiv C-$, and
- l) OR^8 ;

R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are independently selected from:

- 5 H, CN, NO_2 , halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C_1-C_6 alkyl,
 N_3 , $R^9S(O)_q$, $-C\equiv CH$, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF_3 , CF_3O- , CF_3CH_2O- ,
 C_3-C_{10} cycloalkyl, OR^8 , $N(R^8)_2$, $-C(O)R^8$, $-O(C_1-C_6$ alkyl) OR^8 ,
 $-NHC(O)R^8$, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, $-(C_1-C_6$ alkyl) OR^8 ,
- 10 $-(C_1-C_6$ alkyl) $C(O)R^8$, $-CH=CH-R^8$ and



;

R^6 is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- 15 c) NO_2 ,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C_1-C_6 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 20 h) R^8O- , unsubstituted or substituted,
- i) N_3 ,
- j) $R^9S(O)_q-$,
- k) $-HC=CH_2$,
- l) $-C\equiv CH$,
- 25 m) CF_3
- n) $R^8O(C=O)-$, and
- o) $R^8(O=C)O-$;

R^8 is independently selected from

- 30 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C_1-C_6 alkyl,
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R^9 is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R¹³ is independently selected from

5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

10 A¹, A² and A³ are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- d) -O-,
- 15 e) -(C=O)-,
- f) -O(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -NR⁸-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- 20 j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
- k) -NHC(O)NH-,
- l) -S(O)_q-,
- m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
- n) -NHS(O)_q-;

25

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a) heterocycle, and
- 30 b) aryl;

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- b) cycloalkyl,

- c) heterocycle, and
 - d) a bond;

Y is selected from:

- 5 a) aryl,
 b) heterocycle, and
 c) cycloalkyl;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

10 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

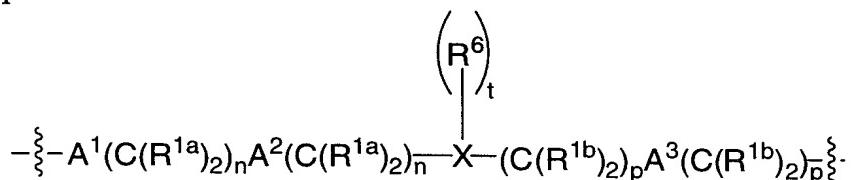
q is 0, 1 or 2;

r is 1 or 2;

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

15 t is 0, 1, 2 or 3:

provided that

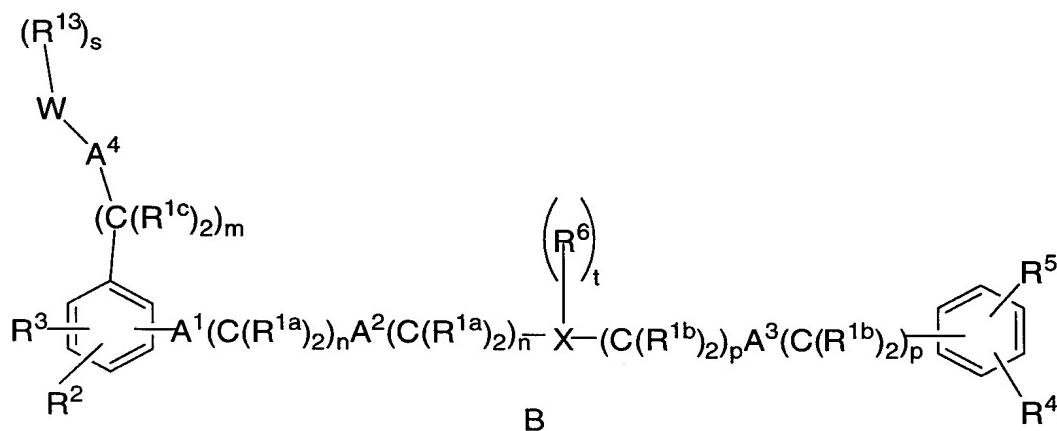


is not a bond:

20

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

3. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula B:



wherein:

R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

R² is selected from:

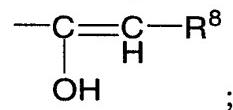
- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) N₃,
- i) R⁹S(O)_q,
- j) R⁸HC=CH-,
- 25 k) R⁸C≡C-, and

1) OR⁸;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

5 H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,

10 -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)R⁸, -CH=CH-R⁸ and



10

R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- 15 d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O-,
- 20 i) N₃,
- j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
- k) -HC=CH₂,
- l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF₃
- 25 n) R⁸O(C=O)-, and
- o) R⁸(O=C)O-;

R⁸ is independently selected from

30 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R¹³ is independently selected from

5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

10 A¹, A² and A³ are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- d) -O-,
- 15 e) -(C=O)-,
- f) -O(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -NR⁸-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- 20 j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
- k) -NHC(O)NH-,
- l) -S(O)_q-,
- m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
- n) -NHS(O)_q-,

25

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a) heterocycle, and
- 30 b) aryl;

X is selected from:

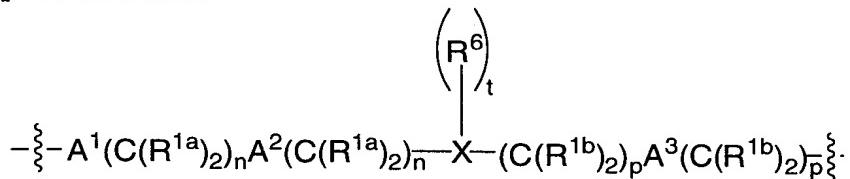
- a) aryl,
- b) cycloalkyl,

- c) heterocycle, and
- d) a bond;

- 5 m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 q is 0, 1 or 2;
 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
 t is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

10

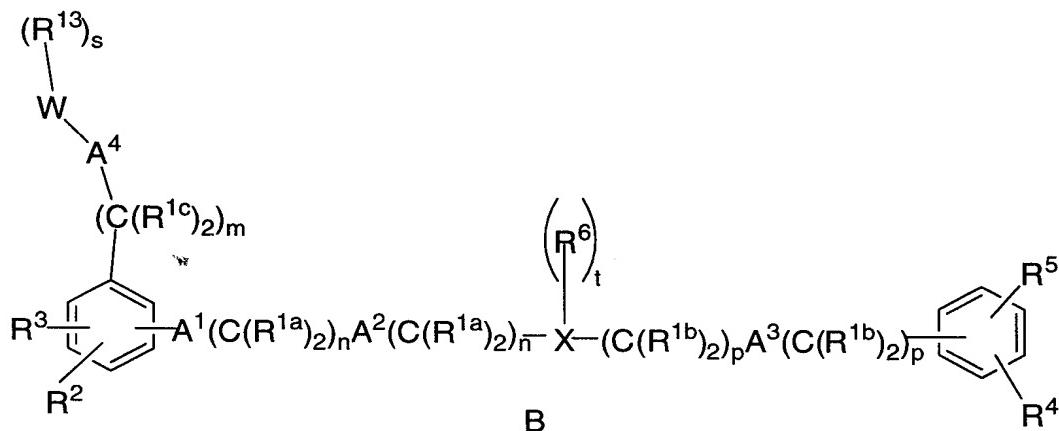
provided that



is not a bond;

- 15 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

4. The compound of Claim 3, illustrated by formula B:



wherein:

- 20 R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:
 a) hydrogen,

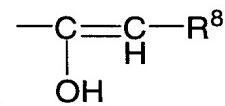
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 5 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

10 R² is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 15 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) N₃,
- i) R⁹S(O)_q,
- 20 j) R⁸HC=CH-,
- k) R⁸C≡C, and
- l) OR⁸;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- 25 H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,



30 -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)C(O)R⁸, -CH=CH-R⁸ and ;

R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,

- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 5 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O-,
- i) N₃,
- j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
- 10 k) -HC=CH₂,
- l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF₃
- n) R⁸O(C=O)-, and
- o) R⁸(O=C)O-;

15

R⁸ is independently selected from
hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

20 R⁹ is independently selected from
H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and
unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

25 R¹³ is independently selected from
H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted
or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,
-(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆
alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

30 A¹ is selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -O-,
- c) -(C=O)-,
- d) -NR⁸-,
- 35 e) -C(O)N(R⁸)-, and

f) $-S(O)_{q-}$;

A² and A³ are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- 5 b) $-HC=CH-$,
- c) $-C\equiv C-$,
- d) $-O-$,
- e) $-(C=O)-$,
- f) $-O(C=O)-$,
- 10 g) $-(C=O)O-$,
- h) $-NR^8-$,
- i) $-C(O)N(R^8)-$,
- j) $-N(R^8)C(O)-$,
- k) $-NHC(O)NH-$,
- 15 l) $-S(O)_{q-}$,
- m) $-S(O)_qNH-$, and
- n) $-NHS(O)_{q-}$;

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

20

W is a heterocycle,

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- 25 b) heterocycle, and
- c) a bond;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

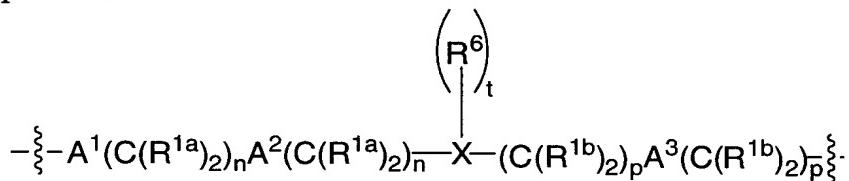
30 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2;

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

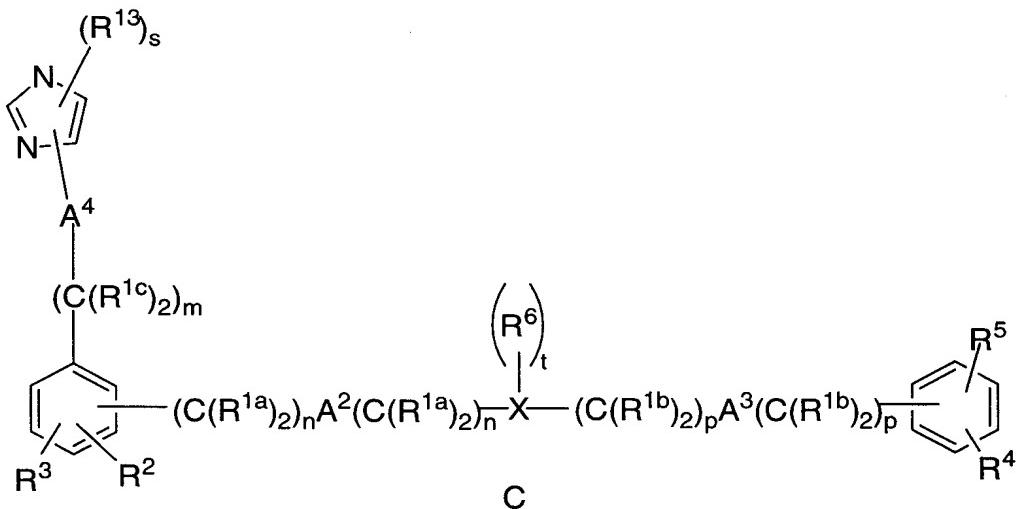
provided that



is not a bond;

- 5 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

5. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula C:



wherein:

- 10 R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

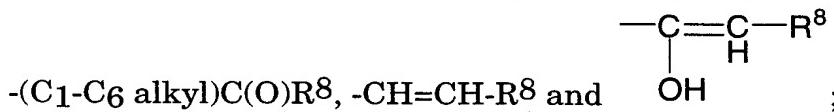
- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 15 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

R² is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- 5 c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 10 g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R⁹S(O)_q, and
- i) OR⁸;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

15 H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,



R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- 25 d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O-,
- 30 i) N₃,
- j) R⁹S(O)_q-,
- k) CF₃
- l) R⁸O(C=O)-, and

m) $R^8(O=C)O-$;

R^8 is independently selected from
hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
5 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R^9 is independently selected from
H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and
unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

10

R^{13} is independently selected from
H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted
or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,
-(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆
15 alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

A^2 is selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- 20 c) -C≡C-,
- d) -O-,
- e) -(C=O)-,
- f) -O(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- 25 h) -NR⁸-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
- k) -NHC(O)NH-,
- l) -S(O)_q-,
- 30 m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
- n) -NHS(O)_q-;

A^3 is selected from:

- a) a bond,

- b) -O-,
- c) -S(O)_q-,
- d) -S(O)_qNH-,
- e) -NR⁸-,
- 5 f) -(C=O)-,
- g) -(C=O)O-,
- h) -O(C=O)-,
- i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
- j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-, and
- 10 k) -NHC(O)NH-;

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

X is selected from:

- 15 a) aryl,
- b) heterocycle, and
- c) a bond;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

20 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

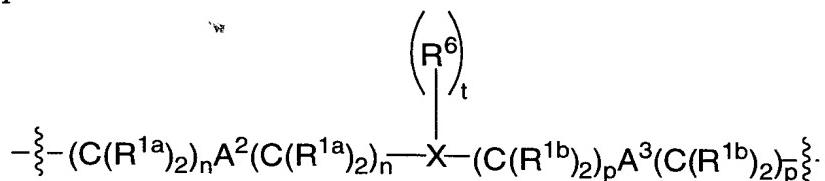
q is 0, 1 or 2;

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

25

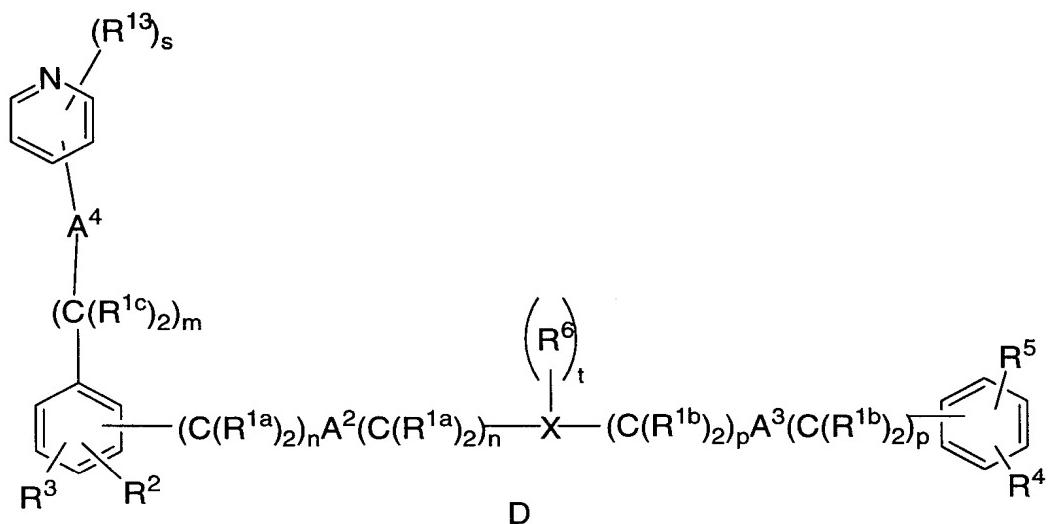
provided that



is not a bond;

30 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

6. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula D:



wherein:

R¹a, R¹b and R¹c are independently selected from:

- 5 a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

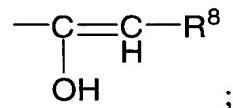
15 R² is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 20 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted

- h) $R^9S(O)_q$, and
- i) OR^8 ;

R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are independently selected from:

- 5 H, CN, NO_2 , halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C_1-C_6 alkyl,
 N_3 , $R^9S(O)_q$, $HC\equiv C-$, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF_3 , CF_3O- , CF_3CH_2O- ,
 C_3-C_{10} cycloalkyl, OR^8 , $N(R^8)_2$, $-C(O)R^8$, $-O(C_1-C_6$ alkyl) OR^8 ,
 $-NHC(O)R^8$, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, $-(C_1-C_6$ alkyl) OR^8 ,
- 10 $-(C_1-C_6$ alkyl) $C(O)R^8$, $-CH=CH-R^8$ and



;

R^6 is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- 15 c) NO_2 ,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C_1-C_6 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 20 h) R^8O- ,
- i) N_3 ,
- j) $R^9S(O)_q-$,
- k) CF_3
- l) $R^8O(C=O)-$, and
- 25 m) $R^8(O=C)O-$;

R^8 is independently selected from

hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C_1-C_6 alkyl,
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

30

R^9 is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C_1-C_6 alkyl, benzyl and
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R13 is independently selected from

5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

A² is selected from:

- 10 a) a bond,
b) -HC=CH-,
c) -C≡C-,
d) -O-,
e) -(C=O)-,
f) -O(C=O)-,
15 g) -(C=O)O-,
h) -NR⁸-,
i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-,
k) -NHC(O)NH-,
20 l) -S(O)_q-,
m) -S(O)_qNH-, and
n) -NHS(O)_q-;

A³ is selected from:

- 25 a) a bond,
b) -O-,
c) -S(O)_q-,
d) -S(O)_qNH-,
e) -NR⁸-,
30 f) -(C=O)-,
g) -(C=O)O-,
h) -O(C=O)-,
i) -C(O)N(R⁸)-,
j) -N(R⁸)C(O)-, and
35 k) -NHC(O)NH-;

A⁴ is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH₂, or spiro C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl;

X is selected from:

- 5 a) aryl,
 b) heterocycle, and
 c) a bond;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

10 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

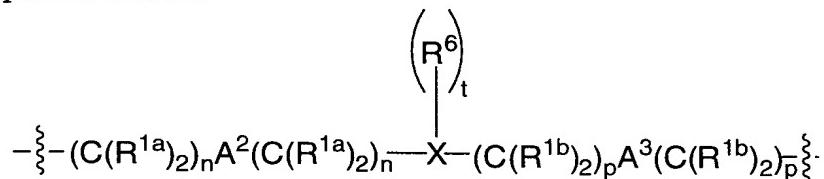
q is 0, 1 or 2; and

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

15

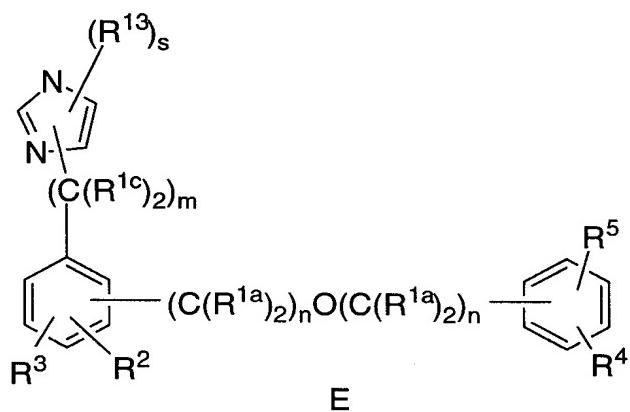
provided that



is not a bond;

20 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

7. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula E:



wherein:

R^{1a} and **R^{1c}** are independently selected from:

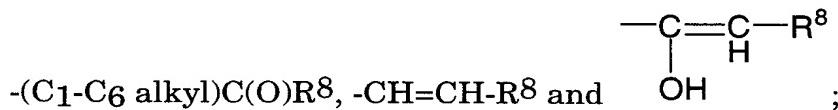
- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

R² is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R⁹S(O)_q, and
- i) OR⁸;

25 **R³, R⁴ and R⁵** are independently selected from:

H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 5 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,



R⁸ is independently selected from
 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 10 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

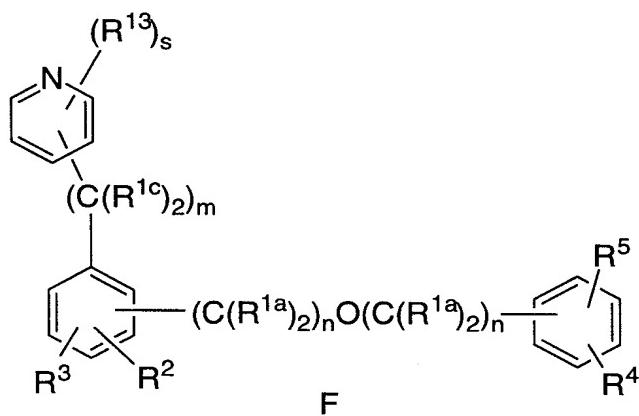
R⁹ is independently selected from
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

15 R₁₃ is independently selected from
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted
 or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,
 -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆
 20 alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 q is 0, 1 or 2; and
 25 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

8. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula F:



wherein:

R^{1a} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

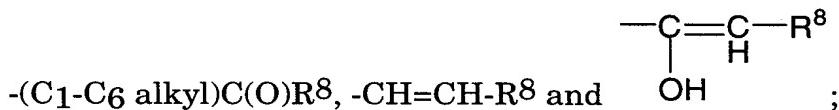
- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, R⁸(C₁-C₆ alkyl)O-, N₃, N(R⁸)₂ or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

R² is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R⁹S(O)_q, and
- i) OR⁸;

25 R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

H, CN, NO₂, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 N₃, R⁹S(O)_q, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF₃, CF₃O-, CF₃CH₂O-,
 C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, OR⁸, N(R⁸)₂, -C(O)R⁸, -O(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,
 5 -NHC(O)R⁸, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸,



R⁸ is independently selected from
 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl,
 10 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

15 R¹³ is independently selected from
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted
 or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,
 -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OR⁸, -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)OC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -(C₁-C₆
 20 alkyl)N(R⁸)₂, and -(C₁-C₆ alkyl)NHC(O)(C₁-C₆ alkyl)R⁸;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

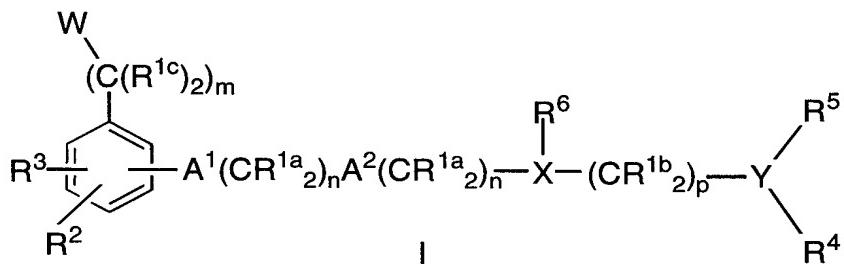
n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2; and

25 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

9. A compound of formula I:



wherein:

R^{1a}, R^{1b} and R^{1c} are independently selected from:

- 5 a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl; unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle; unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl; C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, or N₃;
- 10 c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or R⁸C(O)O-;

15 R² is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 20 e) aryl,
- f) heteroaryl,
- g) C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- h) C₁-C₆ alkoxy,
- i) N₃,
- 25 j) R⁹S(O)_q,
- k) R⁸C=C, and
- l) R⁸C≡C;

R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- a) H,
- b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- 5 e) C₁-C₆ alkyl,
- f) C₁-C₆ alkoxy,
- g) N₃,
- h) R⁹S(O)_q,
- i) -HC=CH₂,
- 10 j) -C≡CH,
- k) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- l) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted,
- m) CF₃O-,
- n) CF₃CH₂O-,
- 15 o) C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, and
- p) CF₃;

R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 20 b) CN,
- c) NO₂,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 25 g) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R⁸O,
- i) N₃,
- j) R⁹S(O)_q,
- k) -HC=CH₂,
- 30 l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF₃
- n) R⁸O(C=O), and
- o) R⁸(O=C)O;

R⁸ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

5

A¹ and A² are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- 10 d) O,
- e) S(O)_q,
- f) O(C=O),
- g) (O=C), and
- h) (C=O)O;

15

W is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted;

20

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- b) heteroaryl,
- c) cycloalkyl,
- 25 d) heterocycle, and
- e) a bond;

Y is selected from:

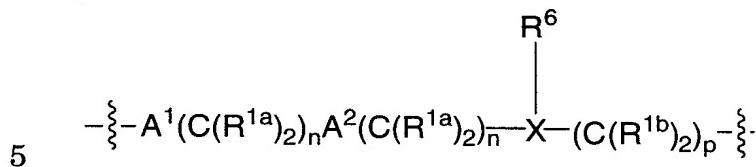
- a) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 30 b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- c) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
q is 0, 1 or 2;

provided that

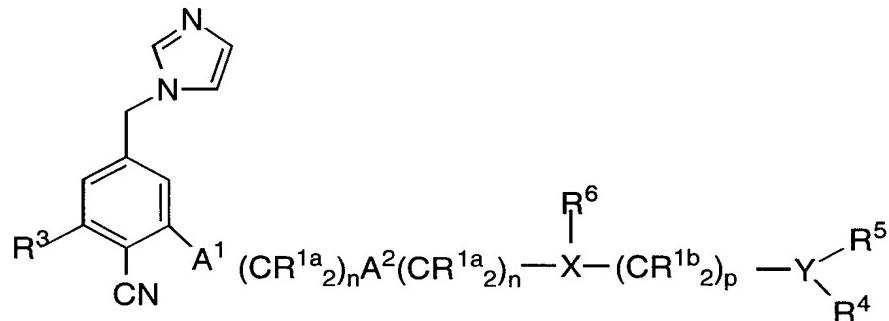


is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

10

10. The compound of Claim 9, illustrated by formula Ia:



wherein:

15

R1a is selected from: hydrogen or C1-C6 alkyl;

R1b is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 20 b) aryl, heterocycle, C3-C10 cycloalkyl, R⁸O- or C2-C6 alkenyl,
- c) C1-C6 alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl,
heterocycle, cycloalkyl, alkenyl, or R⁸O-;

R³ and R⁴ are independently selected from hydrogen, F, Cl, Br, N₃, CN, C₁-C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl and substituted or unsubstituted heterocycle;

5 R⁵ is selected from:

- a) hydrogen, and
- b) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted with hydrogen or a group selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, unsubstituted or substituted C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, CF₃, NO₂, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, and CN;

10 R⁶ is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, CN, NO₂, and
- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted by C₁-C₆ perfluoroalkyl, R⁸O-, R⁸C(O)-, or R⁸OC(O)-;

15 R⁸ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and
20 aryl;

R⁹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

25 A¹ and A² are independently selected from: a bond, -HC=CH-, -C≡C-, O, S(O)_q, O(C=O), and (O=C)O;

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- b) heteroaryl,
- c) cycloalkyl,
- d) heterocycle, and
- e) a bond;

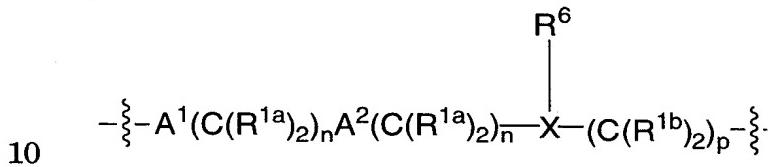
Y is selected from:

- 35 a) aryl,

- b) substituted aryl,
- c) heterocycle, and
- d) substituted heterocycle;

5 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
 q is 0, 1, or 2;

provided that

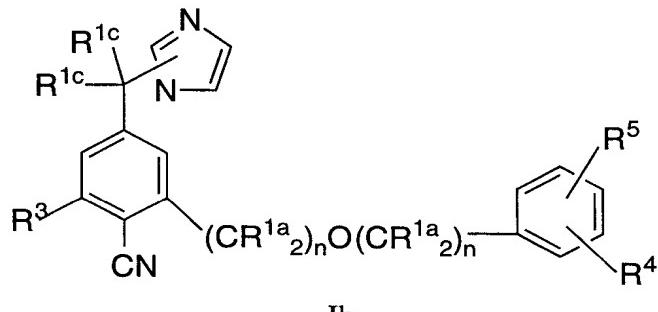


is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15

11. The compound of Claim 9, illustrated by formula Ib:



wherein:

20 R^{1a} is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl; unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle; unsubstituted or substituted

heteroaryl; C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, NO₂, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, or N₃;

- c) C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C₃-C₁₀ cycloalkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, R⁸O-, R⁹S(O)_q-, CN, R⁸C(O)-, R⁸OC(O)-, N₃, or -R⁸C(O)O-;

R^{1c} is independently selected from: H, unsubstituted or substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, and
10 unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl;

R³ is selected from hydrogen, F, Cl, Br, N₃, CN, C₁-C₆ alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl and substituted or unsubstituted heterocycle;

15 R⁴ and R⁵ are independently selected from:

- a) H,
b) halogen,
c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
20 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted, and
e) C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R⁸ is independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

25 R⁹ is independently selected from C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

n is independently selected from: 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
q is 0, 1 or 2;

30 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

12. A compound which inhibits a prenyl-protein transferase, selected from the group consisting of:

- 3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile
5
- 3-(biphenyl-3-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)ethyl]piperazine
- 15 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
20
- 2-(2-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(phenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3-chlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-chlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
30
- 2-(benzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphenyl-2-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35 2-(phenyl-4-butoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(phenyl-3-propoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile

5

2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile

2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile

10 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

2-(3-cyanophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-bromophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15

2-(biphen-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(biphen-4-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

20 2-(3-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25

2-(3-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30 2-(4-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

35

- 2-(4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 5 2-(3,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(1-naphthoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-fluorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 2-(3-t-butylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-[3-(N,N-diethylamino)phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-n-propylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 20 2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,3-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(2,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35 2-(5-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-chloro-4,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(5-hydroxymethyl-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-
5 benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-methylphenylamino)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

10

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

2-(2-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15

1-(5-chloro-2-methoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea

1-(2,5-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea

20

2-(3-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(4-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25

2-(2-benzyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-ethynyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(4-acetyl-3-methyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indazol-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile

35

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(8-oxo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indol-7-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-oxo-indan-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indol-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

10 2-[3-(2-hydroxy-ethoxy)-phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(4-imidazol-1-yl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

4'-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-biphenyl-4-carbonitrile

15

N-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-acetamide

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(9-oxo-9*H*-fluoren-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

20 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*phenyl-benzamide

3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclopropylmethyl-*N*-

25 phenyl-benzamide

2-(5-chloro-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

N-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-

30 benzenesulfonamide

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(indan-5-yloxy)-benzonitrile

3-(9*H*-carbazol-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

35

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-methoxy-4-propenyl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(3-oxo-butyl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

10 2-(4-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3,5-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-(4-phenyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

20 2-(biphen-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-chloro-4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25 2-(2-chlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
 .

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-ylsulfanyl)-benzonitrile

30 2-(2,4-dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfinyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfonyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

35

2-(2-methyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2,4-dimethyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

5 2-(4-chloro-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(5-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

10 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(4-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

10 2-(3-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-pyridin-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

15 *N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-benzamide

20 2-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-*N*-phenyl-acetamide

20 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

25 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

25 *N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-2-phenyl-acetamide

30 5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclohexyl-nicotinamide

30 *N*-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-nicotinamide

35 2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-(2,4-dimethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

- 4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-(1-imidazol-1-yl-1-methyl-ethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 5 1-[4-iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzyl]-1*H*-imidazole
- acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3*H*-imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester
- 10 2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-(5-hydroxymethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
- 15 N-{3-[4-cyano-3-(2,3-dimethoxy-phenoxy)-benzyl]-3*H*-imidazol-4-ylmethyl}-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide
- 20 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[1-(4-chloro-phenyl)-2-hydroxy-1-imidazol-1-yl-ethyl]-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenoxy)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile
- 35 4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-[amino-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

10 4-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

15 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

20 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

25 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

30 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

25 2-(3-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

30 2-(3-*tert*-butylphenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

35 2-(3-diethylamino-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

40 2-(5-chloro-2-oxo-2*H*-[1,2']bipyridinyl-5'-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[2-(2-oxo-2*H*-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

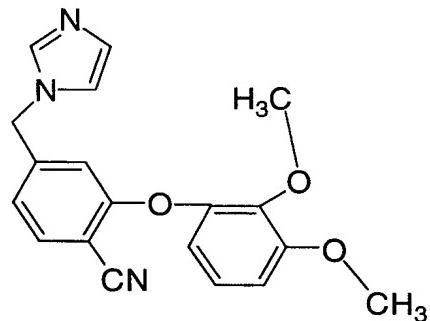
4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-oxo-2*H*- pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

5

4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(2-oxo-2*H*- pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

10 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

13. The compound according to Claim 12 which is:

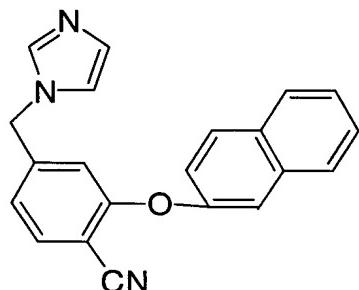


2-(2,3-Dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

14. The compound according to Claim 12 which is:



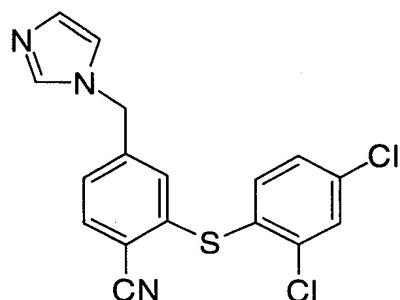
20

4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5

15. The compound according to Claim 12 which is:

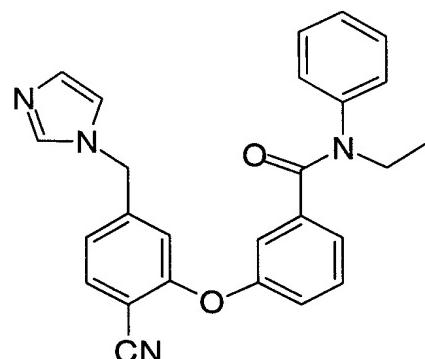


2-(2,4-Dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

10

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

16. The compound according to Claim 12 which is:



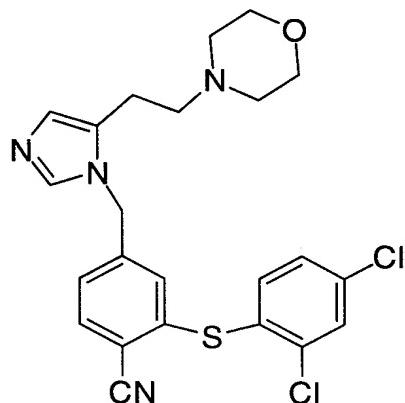
15

3-(2-Cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-ethyl-N-phenyl-benzamide

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20

17. The compound according to Claim 12 which is:



2-(2,4-dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-
5 ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

18. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a
10 pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically
effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.

19. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a
pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically
15 effective amount of a compound of Claim 5.

20. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a
pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically
effective amount of a compound of Claim 12.

21. A method for inhibiting a prenyl-protein transferase
which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a
therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

22. A method for inhibiting a prenyl-protein transferase which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 19.

5 23. A method for inhibiting a prenyl-protein transferase which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 20.

10 24. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

15 25. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 19.

20 26. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 20.

20 27. A method for treating neurofibromen benign proliferative disorder which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

25 28. A method for treating blindness related to retinal vascularization which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

30 29. A method for treating infections from hepatitis delta and related viruses which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

30. A method for preventing restenosis which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

5 31. A method for treating polycystic kidney disease which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

10 32. A pharmaceutical composition made by combining the compound of Claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

33. A process for making a pharmaceutical composition comprising combining a compound of Claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15

SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> deSolms, S. Jane
Hutchinson, John H.
Shaw, Anthony W.
Graham, Samuel L.
Ciccarone, Terrence M.
Merck & Co., Inc.

<120> INHIBITORS OF PRENYL-PROTEIN TRANSFERASE

<130> 19928Y

<150> 60/062,660
<151> 1997-10-08

<160> 26

<170> FastSEQ for Windows Version 3.0

<210> 1
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 1

Cys Val Ile Met
1

<210> 2
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 2

Cys Val Leu Leu
1

<210> 3
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 3

Cys Val Val Met
1

<210> 4
<211> 4

<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 4
Cys Ile Ile Met
1

<210> 5
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 5
Cys Leu Leu Leu
1

<210> 6
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 6
Cys Gln Leu Leu
1

<210> 7
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 7
Cys Ser Ile Met
1

<210> 8
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 8
Cys Ala Ile Met
1

<210> 9
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 9
Cys Lys Val Leu
1

<210> 10
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 10
Cys Leu Ile Met
1

<210> 11
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 11
Cys Val Leu Ser
1

<210> 12
<211> 4
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 12
Cys Ala Ile Leu
1

<210> 13
<211> 15
<212> PRT
<213> Homosapien

<400> 13
Gly Lys Lys Lys Lys Lys Ser Lys Thr Lys Cys Val Ile Met
1 5 10 15

<210> 14
<211> 86
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 14
tctcctcgag gccaccatgg ggagtagcaa gagcaaggct aaggacccca gccagcgccg 60
gatgacagaaa tacaagcttg tggtgg 86

<210> 15
<211> 33
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 15
cacatctaga tcaggacagc acagacttgc agc 33

<210> 16
<211> 41
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 16
tctcctcgag gccaccatga cagaatacaa gcttgtggtg g 41

<210> 17
<211> 38
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 17
cactctagac tgggtcaga gcagcacaca cttgcagc 38

<210> 18
<211> 38
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 18
gagagaattc gccaccatga cggaatataa gctgggtgg 38

<210> 19
<211> 33
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 19
gagagtgcac gcgtcaggag agcacacact tgc 33

<210> 20

<211> 22
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 20
ccggccggct ggaggagttac ag 22

<210> 21
<211> 38
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 21
gagagaattc gccaccatga ctgagttacaa actgggtgg 38

<210> 22
<211> 32
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 22
gagagtcgac ttgttacatc accacacatg gc 32

<210> 23
<211> 21
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 23
gttggagcag ttgggtttgg g 21

<210> 24
<211> 38
<212> DNA
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 24

gagaggtacc gccaccatga ctgaatataa acttgtgg	38
<210> 25	
<211> 36	
<212> DNA	
<213> Artificial Sequence	
<220>	
<223> completely synthesized	
<400> 25	
ctctgtcgac gtatttacat aattacacac tttgtc	36
<210> 26	
<211> 24	
<212> DNA	
<213> Artificial Sequence	
<220>	
<223> completely synthesized	
<400> 26	
gtagttggag ctgttggcgt aggc	24

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/21063

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) :Please See Extra Sheet.

US CL :514/235.8, 341, 399; 544/139; 546/275.1; 548/336.1

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 548/336.1; 546/275.1; 544/139; 514/235.8, 341, 399

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Please See Extra Sheet.

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	US 4,690,942 A (FRICK et al.) 01 September 1987, see entire document.	1-33
A	US 5,559,141 A (KARJALAINEN et al.) 24 September 1996, see entire document.	1-33
X,P	US 5,780,492 A (DINSMORE et al.) 14 July 1998. see entire document.	1-6, 18, 19, 21, 22, 24, 25, 27-33

 Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	"T"	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"X"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
"E" earlier document published on or after the international filing date	"Y"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"&"	document member of the same patent family
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search

08 DECEMBER 1998

Date of mailing of the international search report

26 JAN 1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

FLOYD D. HIGEL aco

Telephone No. (703) 308-1235

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US98/21063

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

IPC (6): A61K 31/535, 31/44, 31/415; C07D 413/00, 401/00, 417/00, 419/00, 233/66

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Documentation other than minimum documentation that are included in the fields searched:

Chemical Abstracts

Index Chemicus

Current Abstracts of Chemistry